English Exercises

FOR

SCHOOL-BOYS

TO

Translate into Latin.

Comprizing all the RULES of *GRAMMAR.*

And other Neceſſary Obſervations; Aſcending gradually from the Meaneſt to Higher Capacities.

By *J. Garretſon*, Schoolmaſter.

The Seventh Edition.

LONDON:

Printed for *Thomas Cockerill*; and are to be Sold by *H. Walwyn*, at the *Three Legs* in the *Poultrey*, over-againſt *Stocks-Market*. 1698.

LICENSED,

Sept. 7. 1686.

Rob. Midgley.

An Advertiſement.

THE Author being deceaſed, and the Book to be Re-printed, a Friend of his, at the requeſt of ſeveral School-maſters, hath made the following Alterations and Additions:

Firſt, Before Examples be given to all the Rules, as they ſtand in order in *Lilly*'s Grammar, there are, in a preliminary way, a competent number of Examples fitted to the more eaſy and fundamental Rules, for the initiating and grounding of Young Beginners. Theſe Rules are concerning,

1. The Nominative Caſe and Verb.
2. The Subſtantive and Adjective.
3. The Accuſative Caſe following the Verb.
4. Conjunctions Copulative and Disjunctive that couple like Moods and Tenſes.
5. The Nominative Caſe following the Verb *Sum*.
6. The latter of two Verbs being the Infinitive Mood.
7. The Genitive Caſe latter of two Subſtantives.

8. *To* or *For* (the use of any) Signs of the Dative Case.

9. *With* or *By* (being an Instrument) Signs of the Ablative Case.

10. The Use and Government of Prepositions.

And (which hath been thought wanting in the Books of this nature) more than ordinary care hath been taken, That in the Examples to every following Rule, Children might be reminded of, and exercised in all those that went before.

Also towards the end, many new Exercises are added to those that were in the former Edition.

And the whole (especially with respect to the Explication of *Lilly*'s Rules) hath been Revised.

TO

TO THE

READER.

THE *Neceſſity and Uſefulneſs of Schools, is too univerſally acknowledged to need the pains of an Argument for its Demonſtration; nor do the School-maſters want the aſſiſtance of Eloquent Encomiums to vindicate the honour of their Employment. To find out Methods whereby that Province may be managed more ſucceſsfully, moſt to the thorough and ſpeedy accompliſhment of Youth, committed to their charge,* hic labor, hoc opus eſt. *And that pains hath been found to be no-where more requiſite than in Tranſlating* Engliſh *into* Latin; *that neceſſary part of School-buſineſs, in which after conſiderable Practice, with the help of the moſt Faithful and Laborious Teacher, Boys ſtill remain lamentably imperfect, and defective. To the redreſſing of that Grievance therefore, if this Work may in ſome (though but ſmall) meaſure be conducible to the eaſe of the Maſter, and promotion of the Scholar, the Author preſumes to hope it may not be altogether exploded.*

It is most readily granted, that divers Learned and Able School-masters, have already done worthily toward the design of facilitating Boys making Latin; *and several of them have compiled useful* Englishes *for Translation, as Mr.* Wase, *Mr.* Walker; *and since them, the worthy Gentleman, Master of* Bury-School, *in his* English *Examples, which hath met with general acceptance. But though the World be much indebted to them for their useful Labours; it is yet to be hoped, that some Addition of further discoveries towards some things, which seem still wanting, may be premised without seeming to design derogations from their esteem, or being guilty of vanity; Especially prefixing before the following Work these modest Acknowledgments.*

Firſt, *That had it pleased any other to have undertaken the Design herein managed, it had been far better accomplished, and would have merited greatest thanks, as well from the Author as others.*

Secondly, *That this Work doth not arrogate to it self so great a sufficiency, as that Boys in their Exercises, or any Translation, shall never need any information besides what is here before them.* Datur plus ultra. *Much less doth it presume to work Miracles,* viz. *To teach those that are sottish and unteachable;* Ex quovis ligno non fit Mercurius.

Thirdly, *It pretendeth not to be without mistakes, but craves a favourable and candid censure. After which humble Concessions, some account of the nature*

ture and method of the enſuing Treatiſe may not be unacceptable.

And First, *I have therein given Examples in Sentences to all the neceſſary Rules of* Syntaxis; *tho ſome leſs, or not at all important, be neglected, I hope without loſs.*

Secondly, *Whereas in the* Engliſh *Examples, before the Examples to each Rule, were ſet two or three words of the Rule it ſelf; finding by Experience that Boys would not reflect upon the Rule, or if they did, they underſtood it not: To remedy that inconvenience, I have prefixed the whole Rule in* Engliſh *as plain as was poſſible, with many Amendments, which might be collected out of the Grammarians, beſides* Lilly, *our uſual Oracle; ſo that this Work may ſerve for an Explanation of our common* Syntaxis.

Thirdly, *In all, or moſt of theſe Rules, where Boys are allowed by our Common* Grammar *to uſe either of two Caſes, I have confined them to one, and not left it indifferent, except the nature of the word governing be abſolutely indifferent, which is but ſeldom; becauſe in many Rules, where the* Latin *Rule leaves it indifferent, one is leſs elegant than the other, and therefore rarely to be admitted. It is certainly more uſeful for Boys to be accuſtomed to the more proper Caſes; they will find out that which comes in with* [interdum] *or* [rarius] *ſoon enough of themſelves; which yet they are minded of after the Rule.*

Fourthly, *Because Boys are apt to forget what is past; I have so ordered the Examples to each Rules, that they contain all of them remembrances of the former, lest while they be imployed about a new Rule, the old ones be forgotten, which is the great Impediment of a Progress in making* Latin. *And that may answer an Objection, which may possibly be made, That the Examples, especially in some places, are too few, in the Rules of the Relative and others. For exemplifying every Rule over and over, under those which follow, makes a competent amends for that paucity.*

Fifthly, *Because Boys are not very likely to render an Example of any Rule before they are come to it; nor can it be expected at the Example, to the* First *or* Second *Concord, they should make time or place, (unless we should suppose them, before they begin to make Exercise, to have a perfect* Grammar *in their Memories.) I have therefore anticipated no Rules, but sometimes forced the sense, or made it less Emphatical and Accurate, than it might otherwise have been, rather than put them upon the Practice of a Rule they have not yet arrived at.*

Sixthly, *I have given Examples to the most useful and frequently Occurring of Mr.* Walker's *Particles; because there is scarce any* English *totally without them; and to them I have added many useful Grammatical Observations both from mine own Experience and others. And if there be occasion for any Particle which is not here exemplified, Mr.* Walker's

own

own Book may be consulted, or a short and cheap Compendium thereof in a late Practical Grammar, *compiled by an Elaborate Schoolmaster.*

Seventhly, *Because when Boys make a considerable progress, they begin to be above short Sentences, and their skill is not so much tried in them, as in continued Discourses, I have added some* Dialogues *and* Epistles, *wherein they are reminded of the former Instructions.*

Eighthly, *In all the Examples, I have endeavoured to intermix some useful Admonitions relating to the duty of Children towards God, or Man, or themselves, because they can never have Principles of Virtue or Prudence, suggested to them too soon; considering the natural forwardness of Young ones to Vice, and the many evil Examples which tempt them thereto.*

Ninthly, *For a good part of the Book, I have caused the force of the Rule to be printed in different Letter, for the Direction of Boys at the beginning; but not in all the Examples, to try their own Discretion; nor quite through the Book, because they may be supposed to be able themselves to distinguish, (when they have been a while experienced) where the force of the Rule lies.*

Lastly, *Because at the first beginning to Translate, or make* Exercises, *they either have not, or cannot well use a* Dictionary, *I have compiled an* Index *of all the Words in the Sententious Examples to the* Grammar Rules, *unless a few by chance escaped*

inſpection. But not farther, becauſe when Boys come to ſome perfection, they cannot be without Dictionaries *for other uſes, as well as Exerciſes, and it is meet they be practiſed in the uſe of them.*

A Work of this Nature and Model, ſparing the Maſter's labour in writing Engliſhes, *and guiding the Scholar by eaſy and ſucceſſive ſteps, I hope may facilitate both the Maſter and Scholar's work, and competently prepare them for making* Epiſtles, Themes, *or any other exerciſe of their own proper Study, that ſhall be expected. Which if it be found to do by thoſe that ſhall not diſdain to make experiment, the ſucceſs will ſufficiently requite the Labour of him who unfeignedly deſires the Advancement of Learning, the flouriſhing of Schools, and the Temporal and Eternal good of Children.*

J. G.

Præ-

Præliminary Exerciſes on the Fundamental Rules.

Rule 1. *Concord* 1.

IN a Sentence the Verb muſt be put in the ſame Number and Perſon that the Nominative Caſe is of.

Note, *All Nouns and Pronouns are of the third Perſon, except* Ego, Tu, Nos, *and* Vos, *and the Vocative Caſe.*

I ſup. I miſtake. I blow. I halt. I wink. I grieve. I increaſe. I run. I fail. I agree. I ſtrive. I learn.

Thou loveſt. Thou waſheſt. Thou calleſt. Thou weepeſt. Thou ſpinneſt. Thou filleſt.

Thou doeſt refute. Thou doeſt drive. Thou doeſt creep. Thou doeſt ſtuff. Thou doeſt patch. Thou doeſt prop.

He doth rub. He doth forbid. He doth cut. He doth grow. He doth bind. He doth tarry.

Note, *That* A, An, *and* The, *are ſigns of Noun Subſtantives Common. All Names of Men, Women, and Places, that have not the ſigns afore them, are Names Proper.*

A Dog barketh. The Sheep bleateth. The Fire burneth. The Graſs withereth. The Ox belloweth. The Gooſe cackleth. The River overflows. The Wind blows. The Cock crows. The Bell rings. The Bird ſings. The Graſs ſprings.

A Man doth go. A Bird flieth. A Fiſh ſwims. A Woman doth creep. A Wolf howleth. An Hog grunts,

We

We fight. We laugh. We eat. We hear. We drink. We lament. Ye carry. Ye tarry. Ye marry. Ye patch. Ye catch. Ye ſnatch. They keep They weep. They ſleep. They fear. They bear. They hear.

Parrots ſpeak. Bulls bellow. Magpies do chatter. Aſſes bray. Horſes neigh. Lovers do flatter.

I did rub. Thou didſt ſcratch. He did tear. We did run. Ye did go. They did creep.

I ſtood. They moved. We perſuaded. Ye asked. Thou playedſt. They ſlew.

They have blamed. Women have ſpun. Ye have climbed. We have deſpiſed. He has hedged. Thou haſt vomited. I have ſaid.

I had drawn. They had ſawn. They ſhall take. Ye will pull. God will rule. Sinners ſhall quake.

Hear thou. Thou ſhalt attend. Let them ſpeak. Swear ye. Let us pray. Let the Devil rage.

I may hide. We can ſlide. Thou mayeſt moan. Ye can buy. He may die. They can groan.

We might roul. He ſhould foul. Ye would wonder. Thou couldſt pay. I might play. The Heavens would thunder.

Thou mighteſt have ruled. I ſhould have obeyed. Ye could have commanded. We could have ſerved. He would have profited. They could have hurt.

When I ſhall have ſupped. When thou ſhalt have written. When ye ſhall have ſleeped. When ye ſhall have riſen. When we ſhall have ſat. When they ſhall have walked.

The Man feels. Cloth is felt. The Eyes ſee. Pictures are ſeen. I know. I am known. We hear. We are heard. Thou teacheſt. Thou art taught. Ye ſhave. Ye are ſhaven.

I was propt. Thou was bought. He hath been ſold. We were driven. Ye have been forced. They have been perſuaded.

Thou

Thou haſt been urged. He hath been overcome. I had been led. We ſhall be thruſt. Ye had been beaten. The Doors ſhall be ſhut.

Thou haſt been looſed. Thou ſhalt be bound. Let them be pricked. We have been touched. Ye will be drawn. Let us be deceived.

Be thou broken. Thou wilt be bended. Let him be moved. We could be tamed. Be ye preſſed. They might be ſubdued.

Thou wouldeſt be eſtabliſhed. I might have been deſpiſed. He could have been kickt. They might have been taught. Ye might have been torn. They might have been caught.

When thou ſhalt have been left. When thou wilt have been ſent. When he ſhall have been called. When we ſhall have been burned. When ye ſhall have been turned. When they ſhall have been required.

Rule 2. *Concord* 2.

EVery Adjective muſt be of the ſame Caſe, Gender, and Number, that the Subſtantive is of, to which it belongs.

A white Horſe trots. A beautiful Woman pleaſes. A ſweet Apple doth delight. A great loſs grieves. A ſharp Spur pricks. A crooked Horn doth ſound.

An heavy weight tires. An hard Leſſon vexeth. A weary Traveller ſits. A black Bean feedeth. A thick Book teaches. The broad Sea appeareth.

The filthy Swine wallow. Perverſe Infants cry. A whoriſh Woman paints. A mad Drunkard reels. Filthy Harlots intice. Swelling Rivers overflow.

The fair Roſe withers. The lovely Face fades. The white Snow falls. A fair Cheek grows pale. A long Life endeth. Strong Men die.

Blackberries are gathered. White Muſhroons are trod upon. Filthy Gain is eſteemed. Famous Virtue is deſpiſed. A naughty Girl is beaten. Good Boys are loved.

The

The hot Summer burns. The cold Winter freezes. Precious time is neglected. Winged hours slide away. Rowling years fly away. Sorrowful days are seen.

Nimble Stags will run. Fearful Hares had started. Wild Bulls be tamed. A mad Dog has bitten. Swelling Toads had been killed. Poisonous Serpents did sting. Unwary Fools have been stung. The Golden Age did exist. True honesty was prized. Curſed Riches were neglected. The Iron Age reigns. All Villanies are practiſed. Every impiety is loved.

If good Lawyers may plead. If skilful Stateſmen do contrive. If uſeful Phyſicians can preſcribe. If Orthodox Preachers might Preach. If wiſe Philoſophers might have reaſoned. If juſt Judges might have judged. If merciful Kings would have governed. If good Subjects will obey. If loving Husbands would have cheriſhed. A diligent Boy may be praiſed. A virtuous Woman might be loved. If tender Girls have been inſtructed. If ugly Vice be ſhun. When bright Piety had been ſought. When painful Maſters do inſtruct. When honeſt Merchants did traffick. When rich Citizens have gained. If the fruitful Fields ſhall have been plowed. When the laborious Plowman ſhall Sow. When all Nature ſhall rejoice.

Rule 3.

A Noun following the Verb is the Accuſative Caſe.

A Man teacheth Boys. A Maſter heareth Leſſons. A Scholar teareth Books. A Fuller waſheth Cloth. A Dier dies Garments. A Carpenter buildeth Houſes.

Love thou God. Embrace ye Chriſt. Let us fear our Maker. Let them follow Virtue. Do ye abominate Vice.

Fowlers take Nets. Huntſmen take Hunting-Poles. A Fiſherman takes a Fiſhing-Cane. An Husbandman takes the Plow. Reapers take Reaping-Hooks. Diggers take Spades.

True

True honour ennobles a man. Humble modeſty graces a woman. Willing obedience adorns a Child. Buſy Birds build Neſts. A nimble Squirrel breaks Nuts. The filthy Sow devours Acorns.

Good Examples inſtruct docile minds. Great Afflictions teach humble Patience. Cruel War deſtroys flouriſhing Kingdoms. Joyful Peace makes men happy.

A fierce Dog tears the harmleſs Sheep. An horrid Bear eats bloudy Entrails.

Good Divines will ſtudy Divinity. Painful Preachers have preached excellent Sermons. Thou haſt handled vain trifles. An hungry Dog will eat dirty Fleſh. Thou hadſt read learned Authors. The ſwelling Seas did drown great Ships. Thou ſhalt ſee happy Peace. The cruel Sword has deſtroyed many Bodies. Thou didſt refuſe great Gifts. He did wear gay Garments. I ſhall hear pleaſant Stories. Ye will buy good Horſes. I had finiſhed a troubleſome buſineſs. Wiſe men have underſtood deep Myſteries. I have conquered ſtrong Giants. We do ſhun fierce Tygers. He driveth fat Cattle. Graſſy Meadows fatten lean Sheep.

When terrible Death invades impious Sinners.
If we ſee armed Juſtice.
When an angry Deity did drown the whole World.
When ſulphureous Flames had burned a ſinful City.
If men have felt Divine Judgments.
If we will follow wholſome Counſel.
Thou ſhalt learn better Manners.
When thou hadſt warned fooliſh Tranſgreſſors.
When thou abhorreſt filthy Vice.
He did preach learned Sermons.
When the Divine Spirit has inlightned blind minds.

Rule 4.

Conjunctions Copulatives, and Disjunctives.
Engliſh, *And*, *Or*, *Nor*, &c.

Latin

Latin, Ac, Atque, Nec, Neque, &c. *join like Moods and Tenses, and sometimes like Moods, but different Tenses* { *in Verbs.*
Like Cases and Gender and Number *in Nouns.*

A General marches and fights.

A careful General will march and fight.

A General provides Swords and Bucklers.

A General chuses plain and open Fields.

A Carpenter loves a smooth and straight Tree.

A Painter procures Colours and Pencils.

A Scholar will learn and study.

Faithful Schoolmasters do instruct and correct.

Diligent and ingenious Boys read their Books, and write their Copies.

A painful Husbandman Sows or Reaps.

Idle Blockheads love neither their Books, nor their Money.

Treacherous Servants will loiter and steal.

Faithful Friends have cheated and betrayed their faithful Friends.

Good and pious Women love and esteem Virtue, and Goodness, and Piety.

Rule 5.

THE *Verb Substantive* Sum *has a Nominative to come after it, and not an Accusative.*

I am a Boy. Thou art a Girl. He is a man. We are Schoolmasters. Ye are Lawyers. They are Divines.

Covetousness is a Vice. Prodigality is a Sin. Generosity is a Virtue. Thriftiness is a Virtue. Abundance is a Vexation. Contentment is Happiness.

They are Botchers. We are Taylors. Thou art a Shoemaker. He is a Cobler. Ye are Footmen. I am an Horseman.

God is a Spirit. Christ is God and Man. Devils were Angels. *Troy* is now a Field. *Troy* has been a City. Vice is an Evil. Virtue is a Good.

We

We have been Madmen We are Fools. Ye will be wiſe Men. Ye had been Servants. Thou art a Maſter. Ye will be Captains.

Cruel War is a Miſery, and a dreadful Ruin. Bleſſed Peace is a Felicity, and a ſweet Reſt. The pale Moon is a Planet. The moiſt Water is an Element. Precious Diamonds are Stones. Yellow Gold is a Metal.

Splendid Garments are proud Ornaments. Many Books are great Impediments. Effectual Grace is an heavenly Gift. True Virtue is the only Nobility. Learned Books are Scholaſtick Weapons. A diligent Boy is a rare Spectacle.

Honey is ſweet. Gall is bitter. Vinegar is ſour. Horſes are generous. Tygers are furious. Foxes are cunning.

Marble is ſmooth. I am hard. Jet is black. They are white. Stones are hard. Thou art ſoft. A Stag is ſwift. He is ſlow. An Elephant is docile. Ye are ſtupid. An Ant is provident. We are ſluggiſh.

The pleaſant Spring is delightful. An hot Summer is troubleſome. The ſickly Autumn is hurtful. The Icy Winter is unpleaſant. Dog-days are torrid and ſickly. Sweet Fruits are unwholeſome and pernicious.

If I had been a skilful Scholar and a good Man,
If we ſhall be happy Lovers.
The black Crow was white.
Be ye faithful and diligent Servants.
If I was a potent General.
If I can be a rich Tradeſman.
Great Oaks have been Acorns.
Great Giants were little Infants.
Thoſe Whelps will be huge Maſtiffs.
A wild Colt may be a good Horſe.
A raſh Youth may be a diſcreet Man.
Diligent Servants will be careful Maſters.

Rule 6.

THE *latter of two Verbs, if the ſign* [to] *comes before it, or may be put before it, is the Infinite Mood.* [To be] *is a ſign of the Infinitive Mood Paſſive.*

Fiſhes love to ſwim. A Dog loves to run. Worms love to creep. A Bird loves to fly. Horſes love to trot or gallop. Aſſes love to go or lie down.

A Boy deſires to play. Ye intend to work.

A Glutton rejoiceth to feed. I chuſe to faſt.

A Drunkard covets to drink. They ſeek to abſtain.

A Blockhead hates to learn. Ye ceaſe to ſtudy.

A Soldier prepares to fight. We thought to have ſtood.

A Coward attempts to run and hide himſelf.

Ye attempted to have ſlain Men and buried them.

Little Boys learn to ſwim. Unskilful Taylors did learn to ſow. Skilful Carpenters know how to build and pull down. Ignorant Weavers will learn to know how to weave. My cockered Brothers had deſired to go. Cunning Knaves endeavour to deceive or betray.

If tender Parents deſire to ſee their dear Children.

A fooliſh Botcher knows not how to make handſome Clothes.

A little Dog can hold a great Boar.

Black Ravens will attempt to devour a ſtinking Carcaſe.

When furious Dogs attempt to tear harmleſs Sheep and Lambs.

Furious Perſecutors have ſought to root out bleſſed Piety.

Opportunity ought to be improved.

Boys love to be commended and rewarded.

Boaſters thought to have been extolled.

Miſery ought to be avoided.

Gay Virgins thought to have been courted and married.

Old Dogs teach little Whelps to lick up fat Pottage and ſweet Milk.

Old Thieves teach young Thieves to rob rich Houſes.

Great Hens teach little Chickens to ſcrape every Dunghil.

Ugly Witches are ſaid to become Black Cats.

The common People believe ugly Witches to become black Cats.

Rule 7.

WHEN *two Subſtantives come together, with* [of] *between them, the latter ſhall be the Genitive Caſe.*

The ſight of a fair Picture delights.

The ſmell of a ſtinking Dunghil offends.

The Pledge of dear Love pleaſes.

The Face of things is changed.

The Colour of green Fields will delight and pleaſe.

The Labour of the induſtrious Bee ought to be praiſed.

The Fear of the Lord is the beginning of Wiſdom and Happineſs.

The Loquacity of Fools is the Abomination of the Prudent.

The Modeſty of a fair Maid is the true Ornament of the mind.

The love of excellent Learning is the Ornament of a pretty Boy.

The loſs of great Treaſures may be repaired.

The loſs of precious Time cannot be redeemed.

The Cares of this World have blinded the minds of men.

The deceitfulneſs of Riches did enſnare the thoughts of Sinners.

The Soul of a pious man will abhor the baſe love of curſed Pleaſures and Luſts.

If the juſt Judgments of God would always ſeize on wretched Sinners, men would not dare commit ſo great Villanies.

The raſhneſs of Drunkards has betrayed the ſecrets of the mind.

When the Vices of a depraved Age ſhall have drawn down the juſt Judgments of a Righteous Deity.

The report of the great Portion of an unmarried Virgin, is oftentimes the ſound of a great Lie.

Baſe Sloth is the Parent of Contempt and Poverty.

Sometimes [of] *is left out, and the latter Subſtantive is put former, ending in* [s].

The Nation's peace, or the Peace of the Nation.

The Church's power, or the power of the Church.

A Lord's dignity, or the dignity of a Lord.

A woman's modeſty, or the modeſty of a woman.

A man's wiſdom, or the wiſdom of a man.

A profeſſed Friend may be a man's Enemy.

The Father's prodigality will be the Son's ſhame and beggary.

Fly great Ladies ſinful Embraces.

The World's contempt is the Mind's content.

The ſtout Soldier's Sword has been the proud Enemy's ruin.

The Soul's loſs is the loſs of loſſes.

The Fool's Tongue may be his Neck's Halter.

The Walls of the City are the defence of the Inhabitants, and increaſe the courage of its Defenders: And the Defender's courage is another Wall of the City.

Death is the common fate of all men, and young and old ſhall feel the ſharpneſs of his Darts.

The rich Favorite of Fortune ſhall have many Companions, and is the ſubject of Flatterers praiſes: But every one will deſpiſe the poor man, when every Blockhead ſhall call the golden Aſs wiſe and learned.

Rule

Rule 8.

TO *and* for (*ſignifying the uſe of any one*) *are ſigns that the Noun next following them muſt be the Dative Caſe.*

Corn grows for Man. Graſs grows for Cattle.

Hay is mowed for Horſes. A Gooſe is carved for the Gueſts.

Senſe abounds to thee. A Shooe is fitted to the Foot.

Magiſtrates provide Priſons for obſtinate Malefactors.

A Rod is prepared for the back of a Fool.

Scriveners buy Lands for wealthy Citizens.

An Hat is fitted to a man's Head.

Filthy Gluttons prepare delicate Dainties for their ungodly Bellies.

A Glove is fitted to a Boy's Hand. Men do accommodate God's Commands to their Luſts.

The fire ſeparates Oil for Chymiſts.

An Hair-lace is platted for a Girl's Head.

Virtue affords true comfort for her Votaries.

Baſe Vice offers happineſs to Fools.

Human Blood is ſacrificed to Helliſh Malice.

Some Verbs govern a Dative Caſe of the word next following without the ſign [to], *and then the word following* that *muſt be the Accuſative. Of which, ſuch as are of more common uſe are theſe that follow. To promiſe. To pay. To give. To tell. To ſend. To offer. To bring. To buy. To procure. To provide,* &c.

My Father promiſed me great Rewards. *Or my Father promiſed great Rewards to me.*

The Debtor pays the Creditor great Sums o Money.

Or the Debtor pays great Sums of Money to the Creditor.

The Stranger told me great wonders. *Or the Stranger told great wonders to me.*

The

The King promiſed my Brother his pardon. My Mother ſent me great Tokens of her love and care.

My Father's Man brought me Bread and Cheeſe.

My good Uncle will give me many good Books and learned Manuſcripts.

My dear Couſin offered me a kiſs.

My little Brother ſent me his Gloves and Handkerchief.

My Maſter forgave my faults.

My Father provided me a good School.

Thy Friends procured thee a good Horſe.

My Uncle has promiſed my Brother all his Farms.

God forgives penitent Sinners their great Offences.

If ye will lend my Father's Servant your Boots and Spurs.

When they had offered *Cæſar* a Crown and Scepter, he refuſed them.

When we ſhall have bought Clothes for the Governor of the City.

If ye have given the Treaſury our Money, ye have done well.

If the ſtedfaſt hope of Eternal Life can bring comfort to dejected minds.

Our Man brought my Uncle's Horſes Hay and Straw for they were almoſt ſtarved.

My dear Eldeſt Brother bought my Siſter new Gloves.

Pay my Maſter forty Pounds.

If you will ſend me a Pen-knife, I will give thee thanks.

When ye ſhall have given my Brother the Grammars, I will ſend you the new Bibles.

The Bleſſed Redeemer hath prevailed to procure Pardon for miſerable Sinners.

The Juſtice of God doth delight to prepare the Fire of Hell for Impenitent Sinners.

God's love doth delight to prepare Heaven's happineſs for true Believers,

Thy

Thy Lands are preſerved for thine Heir.
Thou haſt told thy Father many Lies.
I can tell you that my Father will give me Money, hen he ſhall ſee me to bring him comfort, to apply my ill to learning, and to prepare my Mind for the Paths Virtue. And the Paths of Virtue are at firſt rugged, terwards pleaſant.

Rule 9.

With] *or* by (*ſignifying an Inſtrument*) *are ſigns that the Noun following muſt be the Accuſative Caſe.*

The Mind is diſtracted with Cares and Fears.
The Stomach is fed with Meats.
The Body is broken with Labours.
Men overcome Difficulty with pains.
Soldiers overcome Dangers with daring and Fortide.
Citizens overcome Poverty with Riches.
Lions tear Beaſts by ſtrength.
Foxes ſeize Geeſe by cunning.
Men conquer Armies by Courage.
Nature is poliſh'd by Art.
Art is conſummated by Practice.
Practice is facilitated by Diligence.
I ſtruck my Brother with my Fiſt and a Stone.
Thou kick'ſt thy Siſter with thy Foot.
The Maſter ſmote the Servant with his Stick.
Alexander cut the Gordian knot with his Sword.
The Boy cut the Stick with a blunt Knife.
Thou ſhav'ſt thy Father's Beard with a ſharp Razor.
If the Virtue of Mankind had known how to overcome flictions with Patience.
When the Man's Throat was cut with a ſharp Razor.
The Victory was adjudg'd t'the Foes by the Sword.
The fate of Nations is known to be governed by Divine ovidence.

Reapers

Reapers reap Corn for the careful Farmers with ſharp Sickles.

Mowers mow Hay for the laborious Husbandman with crooked Sythes.

The Maſon's Servants build the Walls of an Houſe for a rich Nobleman with Lime and Stones.

If thou wilt ſend me my Paper, I will bring thee thy Book, and I will trim thy Book with my Penknife.

If you will buy me four good Horſes, I will lend you a Sum of Money, and will give you a Saddle and Bridle, and will furniſh you with new Boots.

We have commanded thee to build our Uncle's Ships with the ſtrongeſt Boards.

You plowed your Ground with my Father's Plows, and you promiſed him a great Sheep; but you payed him a little Lamb.

When we feel our Fleſh to be burned with ſcorching Fire, we ſhall not ſtand.

I will tell my Mother this great rumour, that her Lover has offered my Siſter an hundred pieces of Gold, and has promiſed her to adorn her with precious Jewels.

If you ſhall have heard a famous City to be taken by the Valour of the Soldiers, and the Induſtry and Conduct of their General.

My Brother's Man began to pluck Roſes for my Siſter with his dirty Hands. He is a Sloven.

My Mother's Maid was ſeen to carve the Gooſe for the Servants with my Father's Knife, for ſhe is a bold Girl.

The General of the Army took care to provide Clothes for his Soldiers, with great induſtry, and that is a careful General.

Cruel Tyrants will rejoice to prepare Puniſhments for Innocent Subjects, by force or by fraud; for cruel Tyrants are devouring Wolves.

Rule 10.

THESE *following Prepositions govern an Accusative Case.*

Ad *to.* Adversus, sum *against.* Ante *before.* Apud *at.* Circa *about.* Circiter *about* Circum *about.* Cis, Contra *on this side.* Contra *against.* Erga *towards.* Extra *without.* Infra *beneath.* Inter *between.* Intra *within.* Juxta *nigh to.* Ob *for.* Penes *in the power.* Per *by.* Pone *behind.* Post *after.* Præter *besides.* Prope *nigh.* Propter *for.* Secundum *according to.* Supra *above.*

Trans *beyond.* Versus *towards.* Ultra *beyond.*

Though (to) *be generally the sign of the Dative; yet after Verbs of motion, of exhorting, provoking, calling, inclining,* &c. *'tis made by* (Ad) *with an Accusative Case.*

I have walked to the City. I will run to the Market. Let us go to the Banks of the River. We will exhort thee to Virtue. He inclines his mind to his study.

Thou shalt invite thy Master to Supper. Call ye your Schoolfellows to play. Kingdoms provoke Kingdoms to War.

A Scholar strives against a Scholar. An Orator strives against an Orator. A Poet strives against a Poet. A Piper strives against a Piper.

The Captain goes before his Soldiers.

Boys abide at the School. I met my Brother at the Market. The Serjeants go before the Mayor. The Passenger is at the Ship. The Heifer wanders about the Fields. Soldiers encamp about the City.

Note, Circiter *about, always refers to time, and never to place.*

Darkness arose about the sixth hour. My Father died about the first day of the Week. He lived with my Uncle about six Weeks.

The Cattle are on this side of the River. Thou shalt not swim against the Stream. Charity is exercised

sed towards our Neighbours. The Mare feeds on this side of the Brook. Let us not fight against two Soldiers. Piety is exercised towards God.

My Friend lives without the old City. The Woman's crooked Nose appears beneath her rugged Forehead.

The pretty Boy sits between the pretty Girls.

The Digger sleeps without the broad Ditch.

The Belly hangs beneath the Breast. He played between both Houses.

Note, Inter *frequently signifies among*.

Thy Sister is fair among Women.

The Eagle is King among Birds. The Whale is King among Fishes. The Lion is King among Beasts.

The Mountain is within the hundredth Stone.

I observed my Sister to play nigh to the yellow Bank.

Rewards are assigned by the Master to the Scholar for diligence.

The Prey is within my Nets. They have pitched their Tents nigh the City-walls. My Brother was punished by my Father for his Sawcineſs and Pride.

My Friend is in the power of his Adversary.

He came to us by the Market-place.

The Dog comes behind his Master.

Thou art in the power of the King.

The Stag did run through the Vallies.

The Servants walk to Church behind their Master and Mistress.

After the setting of the Sun, the Stars arise.

The Boy had Quills besides an Inkhorn. We will sit hard by the River. The Sun appears after Storms.

When the Knight kept Hawks besides Dogs.

Let us play hard by the Dunghil.

Children eat Lice for the Jaundice. Kings are honoured according to their Dignity. The Birds fly above the Clouds. Physicians do order Men to drink Milk and Brimstone for the Itch. The matter happened according to our wish.

The Prodigies appear above the City.

The Master owes the Servant money for Service.

Our Enemies fled beyond the Seas. We walked beyond the Mountains.

The Cattle run beyond the River.

The Birds fled beyond the Fields.

Note, Versus *is put after the word it governs.*

Clients go towards their Patron.

The Dogs run towards the Hills.

The Men hasten towards the City.

These following Prepositions govern an Ablative.

A, *before a word beginning with a Consonant.* } from
Ab, *before a word beginning with a Vowel.* }

Absque *without.* Coram *before, or in presence.* Cum *with.* De *of, or concerning.* E, ex, *of, or out of.* Præ *before, or in comparison.* Pro *for, or instead of.* Sine *without.* Tenus *up to.*

Drunkards go from an Alehouse to an Alehouse.

A Maid without Modesty, is as a furious Mare without a Bridle.

Guests proceed from an Egg to an Apple.

We see a Boy without Government, to be a mad Mastiff without a Chain.

My Friend pleaded my Cause before that Judge.

(*With*) *when it notes Company, or signifies* (*together with*) *is made by* cum, *otherwise it is an Ablative.*

I went with my Brother to the green Fields, and there I beat him with a Rod.

That nimble Woman was seen to dance before the King.

I fought with mine Enemies with great Stones, and then rejoiced with my Companions.

That wanton Boy has discovered his Impudence before me, and I will prepare Rods for his Back.

The Water rushes through the Street with much Mud.

I heard good News of (or concerning) my Brother.

The Cookmaid ſnatch'd the Cheeſe with her hand out of the Jaws of the great Dog.

The Seaman doth diſcourſe of the Sea.

I heard that Rumour of you.

That Boy brings thee ſhame, and is praiſed before thee.

Men did admire my Father before my Uncle; for my Father provided for the Poor.

Thou ſhalt be condemned out of thine own mouth.

I will grind for thee. A Purſe without Money, is a miſerable Companion,

Chriſt was the Saviour of Men, and died for wretched Sinners.

A Scabbard without a Sword, is the Inſtrument of a Coward.

Note, *That* Tenus *is put after the word it governs, and puts the word, if Plural, in the Genitive Caſe.*

The Waters covered him up to the Eyes.

The Brook was up to his Knees.

The River was up to his Ears.

Prepoſitions governing two Caſes, are theſe that follow.

1. IN *and* ſub, *after Verbs of Motion, govern an Accuſative, (and then* in *ſignifies* into) *otherwiſe they govern an Ablative.*

2. Subter *under, indifferently, either Accuſative or Ablative.*

3. Super *upon, Accuſative or Ablative*; Super *about, Ablative only.*

4. Clam *unknown to, now generally an Ablative, formerly an Accuſative, as alſo* Clanculum.

The Boy jumpeth under the Waters, to gather Pebble-ſtones for his Playfellows. He caſt his Book into the Fire.

The Girl gathered Herbs under the Hedge, and brought her Mother thoſe Herbs and fine Flowers.

The

The Man in that Houſe offered me *Pears* and *Plums*.

My Uncle brought my Brother Money, and he ran away into the Woods.

I ſlept under a Form in the School, and my Mother ſent me there my Dinner.

If I had ſtay'd under the Shades, I would have ſlept, and Sleep would have given me reſt.

My Father lent my Uncle a great Sum of Money in the White Parlour

My Brother came to me in the Fields, and ſtruck me with his Fiſt.

The Dog is under the Table. The Hare is under the Buſh The Horſe treads upon the Graſs with his Feet. The Father asks concerning his Son. My Mother procured Money for me unknown to my Father.

The Water lies upon the Earth, and the Air lies upon the Water.

The Wives of the Soldiers ask concerning their Huſbands.

My Couſin is a naughty Boy, for he ran away from School unknown to my Father and his Maſter; and he was ſeen to ſtrike the Servant-maid with a great Stone, and to buy Keys for a Thief; and to take Money out of my Father's Pockets.

Some Recapitulatory Exerciſes.

1. A Brave Soldier is a Kingdom's Glory, and reſolves to purchaſe Honour to himſelf by his Sword through bloody Rivers.

2. A skilful Shoemaker knows how to fit a Shoe to a Lady's foot with his Hand and Glove, without other Inſtruments; a skilful Shoemaker is a great Artiſt.

3. The Grace of God is a Man's happineſs, and abides without Riches after loſſes, in great dangers, and is believed to afford true Comfort to God's Worſhippers by its excellent Virtue.

4. Every ſort of Happineſs abounds to the diligent

man; and men have been observed to conquer difficult labours by diligence, and to be praised for their industry. Industry is a great Virtue.

5. If you will send me your Verses, I will lend you my Themes; and will endeavour to provide a Dictionary for you, and procure you other Books. Learning is the Ornament of a Man's Life, and is acquired by Labour and Study.

6. The Spring is a pleasant time, for then we see Nature to be renewed by the cherishing Beams of the Sun; and then we see the Trees to sprout, and the Gardens to bring forth Flowers for the laborious Bee.

7. I struck my Sister with a Stick, and was forced to fly into the Woods, where I observed Corn to grow for the Husbandman, and green Grass for the Cattel. The Fruits of the Field are God's Gifts. But when I had tarried there awhile, I returned to my Parents, and submitted my self to their mercy, and they for gave me my Offence.

8. When my dear Mother, unknown to my Father, shall send me Money, I will pay my Creditors their Debts, and will provide a Supper for my Friends in my Chamber, without the consent of my Brother, or my Master's leave; and will give my Friends Gifts with my own hands.

9. A valiant General is a strong Rock, without fear or baseness, and resolves to fight against his Enemies, and procure a firm and stable Peace for his King and Country by his victorious Sword; and always is known to grant his Suppliant Enemies their Life, and never to offer his Friend any unkindness.

10. A Merchant-man sails to the remote Parts of the World, by the help of the Wind, through Waves and Dangers, in great Storms, besides Rocks and Quicksands, among the *Barbarians*, far from his Children, and sends his Wife Gifts with his Friends in his Ship. When he hath obtained good Success according to his wish, he rejoices to prepare Rewards for the laborious Seamen.

11. Courage

11. Courage and Conduct bring men Victory. Victory gladdens the minds of the Soldiers. Stout Soldiers rejoice to ſubdue Nations by Arms, and War oftentimes is a neceſſary Evil: And when Men conquer, they reap the fruits of their pains. Crowns are formed for a conquering General's Head.

12. Careful Parents lie in Bed without ſleep or reſt, and ſtudy to provide Arts for their Sons, and Portions for their Daughters. They give them Learning and Manners, and buy them neceſſary Books; and when their Children offend, they correct them with Stripes. The care of Parents is the happineſs of Children.

Exerciſes fitted to Lilly's *Concords and Rules, together with Obſervations upon them.*

1 *Concord.*

VErbum Perſonale cohæret cum Nominativo Numero & Perſona.

The Verb Perſonal agrees with his Nominative Caſe in Number and Perſon.

We mourn. Ye had found.
I live. They will fall.
Thou loveſt. The Clock ſtrikes.
He doth learn.

The Maſter readeth; Boys ſhould attend; ye play.

The Preacher preacheth, ye do not hear.
Parents love. Children fear.
Truants are deſpiſed. Diligence is praiſed.
A Man fights. Men conquer.
A Fool laugh'd. The Fool was laughed at.

Nominativus primæ vel ſecundæ Perſonæ rariſſimè exprimitur niſi causâ diſcretionis, *&c.*

In verbis quorum significatio ad homines tantum pertinet, &c.

Note, 1. Ego, tu, ille, nos, vos, illi, *when the* English *of any of these is the Nominative Case to a Verb, the* Latin *must not be expresst, but understood, unless there be an emphasis or distinction in the word*, e. g.

I love not thee, because *thou* beatest me.

I will punish him, because he played.

Note, 2. *Sometimes there be two or more Nominative Cases before one Verb, which have the word* [and] *between them (sometimes understood) and all belong to one Verb; and in such Case the Verb following must be of the Plural Number; and of such Person, as the more worthy Nominative Case. Now the Pronoun of the first Person is more worthy than the second or third; and the second more worthy than the third, (of which third Person are all Nominative Cases, except* ego, nos, tu, vos.)

My Brother and *I* will *play*.

Thou and I did learn.

The Cloak, the Paper, and the Knife, were found.

Thou and my Father are observed.

Non semper vox casualis est Verbo Nominativus, &c.

Note, 3. *Tho a Substantive, Noun or Pronoun, be usually the Nominative Case to a Verb, yet not always, but sometimes a Verb of the Infinitive Mood, and then the Adjective (if there be any) after the Verb, must be the Neuter Gender, if it have no Substantive to agree with.*

To lie is not *lawful.*

To cheat is not safe.

To play is not profitable.

To neglect hurteth.

To rest strengtheneth.

To jeer fretteth.

Aliquando Oratio, &c. *And sometimes a whole Sentence, (which hath always an Infinitive Mood in it.)* e. g.

To sleep long is not wholsome

To despise Admonitions destroyeth Boys.

To be vexed because of Losses consumeth.

To teach others, teacheth the Teachers.

2. *Con-*

2. *Concord.*

ADjectivum cum Subſtantivo genere, numero & caſu Concordat.

Every Adjective muſt be of the ſame Caſe, Gender and Number with the Subſtantive to which it belongs, which anſwers to who? *or* what?

A *diligent Maſter* inſtructeth *attentive Scholars.*

A godly Son rejoiceth an happy Father.

A needy Man findeth few Friends.

A ſmall Family requireth little Preparation.

A good Exerciſe deſerveth great Praiſe.

Raſh *Counſel* hindreth great gain.

Ad eundem modum Participia, &c.

A Pronoun or Participle muſt agree with the Subſtantive as if it were an Adjective, e. g.

My good Maſter correcteth his own Son.

Thy torn Book hath not my Leſſon.

Our Form fighting, loſt the promiſed Reward.

Your Man-ſervant running, threw down my Brother ſtanding.

A fighting Cock fears not his crowing Enemy.

A neighing Horſe deſpiſeth the Darts flying.

A raging Multitude breaketh ſetled Peace.

Note, 1. *Sometimes in a Sentence there is an Adjective, which hath no Subſtantive to agree with, and which hath this ſign* [the] *before it, as if it ſelf were a Subſtantive. In ſuch Caſe that Adjective muſt be always the Maſculine Gender, (becauſe the word* Man *and* Men *is always underſtood); if it ſtand before a Verb, it muſt be the Nominative Caſe; if after a Verb, the Accuſative; and for its Number, it is for the moſt part ſuch as the Verb, which it either cometh before or after*, e g,

The Induſtrious are praiſed, but the *Slothful* are puniſhed.

The Righteous findeth Peace, but the Wicked ſhall feel Torment.

The Covetous despiseth the Poor, but the Liberal cherisheth him.

The Wise seeketh greater Wisdom, but the Fool despiseth Understanding.

The merciful and kind shall find mercy, but the Cruel shall be recompensed.

Note 3. *Sometimes the word* [thing] *or* [things] *comes after an Adjective, and is the Substantive to it, but in such Cases you must rather omit making Latin for* thing, *and only put the Adjectives into the Neuter Gender, and make such Case and Number*, al res *should have been if it had been expreſt*, e. g.

It is a pleasant *thing* to see the Sun.

It is a more pleasant *thing* to see God.

It is a most cruel *thing* to kill Infants.

To *exercise* Clemency is a most generous *thing*.

To Play little, to Sleep little, to Learn much, to Rise early, are very excellent *things*.

To despise the wicked, and to love the good, are *things* commendable.

Note, 4. *Sometimes two or three Substantives with* [and] *between them, have but one Adjective, which hath relation to them all; in such Case the Adjective must be the Plural Number, and in Gender must agree with that which is of the most worthy; the Masculine is more worthy than the Feminine or Neuter; and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter; except in things which have no Life, and there the Neuter is most worthy*, e. g.

My Father and Mother are pious.

My Brother and Sister are idle.

Thy Paper and thy Penknife are bad.

My Exercise and my Lesson are profitable.

Our Man-servant, and Maid-servant, and I, are good, and shall have Rewards.

Thou, thy Master, and thy Mistress, have been kind, and merit my greatest thanks.

3. *Concord.*

RElativum cum Antecedente concordat Genere, Numero & Perſona.

The Relative [Qui] *agreeth with his Antecedent in Gender, Number and Perſon,* e. g.

1. The good Boy, which.
2. The honeſt Nurſe, which.

Quoties nullus Nominativus interſeritur inter Relativum & Verbum, *&c.*

1. *The Relative muſt not agree with the Antecedent in Caſe, but muſt be the Nominative Caſe to a Verb, if it ſtand immediately before a Verb, and no other Noun and Pronoun between it, and the Verb be the Nominative Caſe to it,* e. g.

The Woman is loved, which [*Woman*] hath a fair Face.

That Girl is lovely, which [*Girl*] bought me my Knife.

That Servant is truſty, which [*Servant*] brought me my Breakfaſt.

That Hat begins to be torn, which [*Hat*] covers my Brother's Head.

That Man is a Butcher, which [*Man*] ſtruck my Father with a Stone.

That Preacher is honoured, which [*Preacher*] knows how to prepare Divine Comforts for the Soul.

I love that Schoolfellow, which [*Schoolfellow*] lent me Books.

I who found your Book.

The Maſter is honoured which taketh pains.

Thou art condemned, who deſpiſeſt thy Mother.

He had great praiſe that had the longeſt Part.

The godly Father that inſtructeth the wicked Son, delivereth himſelf.

The rebellious Scholar that deſpiſeth his Maſter, vexeth his Maſter, but he deſtroyeth himſelf.

The wicked that fear not God, will blame their own Folly hereafter.

The

The Rewards which are promiſed ſhall be given, if the Works that are required be done

At ſi Nominativus Relativo & Verbo interponatur, &c.

2. *But if between the Relative and the Verb there ſtand a Noun or Pronoun Subſtantive, which anſwers to the Queſtion* who *or* what? *made by the Verb, then the Relative muſt be either,*

Such Caſe as the Verb requireth after him, which is in the ſame Sentence with the Relative, (which Sentence ought, in writing proper Engliſh, *to be diſtinguiſhed by a* Comma *before and after it) if it will anſwer the Queſtion* whom *or* what? *made by the Verb,* e. g.

1. The Boy will die, *that,* thou haſt beaten.

2. The Horſe was very good, that my Father ſold.

3. The Comedy which we acted, was pleaſant.

4. The Boy, whom Learning delighteth, will win Love, and ſhall be honoured.

5. The diligent Maſter, whom the Boys obſerve, maketh his Scholars learned; but he, whom his own Scholars deſpiſeth, laboureth in vain.

6. That foul Vice, which Men embrace moſt greedily, is moſt hurtful.

2 *Or if any other word ſtand between it and the Verb, beſides the Nominative Caſe to the Verb; or ſtand before it and the Verb which requires a Caſe, then the Relative doth not follow the Verb, but is to be put in ſuch Caſe as that other word governs,* e. g.

1. The Houſe, *whoſe Foundation* is not ſtrong, will fall when the Wind bloweth.

2. The Praiſe for which thou ſtriveſt, ſhall not be given, becauſe thou doſt not exerciſe thy utmoſt ſtrength.

If [whoſe] *be the* Engliſh *of the Relative, the Relative muſt be Genitive Caſe.*

1. The Man, *whoſe* Fame is loſt, is miſerable.

2. The Boys, whoſe Leſſon is hardeſt, apply the greater Induſtry.

If

If a Prepoſition come before the Relative, the Relative is governed of that, e. g.

The Mark, to which the Horſe runs, endeth the Horſe's Labour.

In other Caſes, it hath commonly ſome ſign before it, as [of] [to] [than] *&c.* and muſt be rendred according to other Rules.

Note, *Two or three Antecedents Singular, will have a Relative Plural, which agrees with the more worthy Perſon and Gender.*

1. My *Brother* and *I*, *who* came, were admitted.

2 The Maſter and Miſtreſs which take care of the Servants, are honoured.

3. I have found the Paper, the Penknife, and the Rule, which had been loſt.

4. He and I, which are good Boys.

5. My Father, my Siſter, and you and I, which are ready, will go.

6. Thou and thy Father, who *ſtudy* Temperance, will live long.

7. The wicked Man, and the bloody Woman which wounded my Mother, fled; but my Uncle and Aunt, that loved her very well, will reveng her Death, tho my Father is dead.

8. Thou and I, *who* have ſpoiled the Paper and Ink, that we bought, have provoked our Maſter, *who* loveth thrifty Boys that keep all things carefully, and ſpoil nothing.

9. Thou and he neglected thoſe Precepts, and Admonitions, *which* have been repeated ſo often.

3. Interdum etiam Oratio ponitur pro Antecedente. *Sometimes one or two Sentences going before, anſwer the Queſtion* who *or* what? *and then the Relative following them muſt always be of the Neuter Gender; and if there be one Sentence for an Antecedent, the Singular Number, if two or more, the Plural, and always in either Caſe the third Perſon*, e g.

1. *Thou truanteſt much*, and *art very idle*, *which* are moſt pernicious things.

2. I

2. I have made my Exercise, and construed every Sentence afterward, which will please.

3. I have vexed my Father, I have provoked my Master, which trouble me very much

4. I write, thou makest thy Exercise, which are different Works.

Note, *Sometimes a Pronoun Primitive, not exprest, but understood in a Possessive, going before the Relative, is the Antecedent to the Relative; and may (if there be occasion) have an Adjective to agree with it, as if it were exprest*, e. g.

1. I hate *thy* Manners, *who* dost not reverence Superiors.

2. I found thy Book, *who* art a careless Boy.

3. I had thy Honour, *who* neglectest thy Exercise.

4. God abhorreth thy Hypocrisy, who heareſt Sermons, but dost not regard them.

5. I excused thy Fault, whom thy Playfellow accused.

6. Thou and I will visit our Country-house, *who* live pleasantly, near a River.

5. Note, *The Antecedent is sometimes, in good Authors, repeated after the Relative*; *as* Diem scito esse nullum, quo die non dico pro reo. Cicero. *There is no day, in which day I plead not for some guilty Person.*

Interrogatives and Indefinites follow the Rule of the Relative; that is, if a Nominative Case come between them and the Verb, they must be the Accusative Case; if there be no Nominative between, they must be the Nominative Case to the Verb, e. g.

1. What troubleth thy mind? My Friend! What Grief hast thou felt? What hast thou done?

2. Whether of the two I shall cut, I know not.

Constructions of Noun Substantives.

Reg. 1. QUum duo Substant. diversæ significationis, &c. *If two Substantives stand together in* English, *with the Particle* [of] *betwixt them, the latter of the two must be the Genitive Case*, e. g.

1. The

1. The valiant *Son* of *Philip* coveted the *Dominion* of the *whole World.*

2. The fear *of God,* contempt *of* the World, and ſtedfaſt hope *of* Eternal Life, make quietneſs of mind, which is the great happineſs *of* Man; which wiſe Men greatly deſire.

3. The ſound *of* the Clock calleth Boys to School.

4. The noiſe *of* the Trumpet ſtirreth up the warlike and generous Horſe, which knoweth the ſign of the Battel.

Proinde hic Gen. in Adject. Poſſeſſ. &c.

The former Subſtantive ſometimes is rendred by an Adjective Poſſeſſive derived from it, and muſt then agree with the latter in Caſe, Gender, and Number.

You diſcourſe of Sea-affairs.

We gathered Mountain-fruits.

I boiled Garden-herbs.

I flung away the Dunghil-weeds.

My Brother's Houſe. My Father's Garden.

3. Note, *When two Subſtantives in* Engliſh *come together without ſo much as* [the] *between them, only the ſign* [the] *before the firſt of them, the latter muſt always be made the Genitive Caſe,* e. g.

The Ditcher cleanſed the Town-ditch.

The Boy fell into the Tower-ditch.

The Slave leapt over the City-walls, and eſcaped.

The Carpenter built my Garriſon-walls.

This Cannon broke down the Caſtle-walls.

The Boys love the School-chimney when their Limbs are cold; but in Summer-time they chuſe the Fields.

Let ſome body go up, and open the Chamber-door.

Reg. 2. Laus & Vituperium rei, &c.

[Of] *between two Subſtantives (and after the Verb* Sum) *whereof the latter betokens the quality or property of the former, to its praiſe or diſpraiſe, ſhews that the latter Subſtantive before which it ſtands, muſt be put into the Ablative Caſe,* e. g.

I love a Boy of an excellent Wit.

The

The Servant *of* a ſtubborn Spirit, that will not obſerve his Maſter's Command, is beaten.

Our Nation is happy, that hath a Prince *of* great Clemency.

The Maſter hath eaſy work that teacheth Boys *of* flexible Minds, and ingenious Diſpoſitions.

The Scholar that refuſeth to regard the Maſter's words, *is* of *perverſe Mind*.

The Boy, that plays when others learn, and learns when others play, is *of* a baſe Diſpoſition.

The deceitful Man, that privily upbraideth his Friends, is *of* diſhoneſt manners.

Reg. 3. Opus & uſus Ablativum exigunt.

[Of] *after need, is a ſign of the Ablative Caſe.*

1. Altho I have twice learned the whole Grammar, yet I have *need* of *daily reading*.

2. Thou art Ignorant, and haſt need of Inſtruction; but thou doſt not regard, therefore thou haſt *need* of the Rod.

3. The Limb which refuſeth the benefit of ſofter Ointments, hath *need* of ſharper Remedies.

4. He that teacheth Boys, hath *need* of Patience and Diligence, for all Boys are not of docible Wits.

Reg. 4. Eſt ubi in Dativum vertitur.

Sometimes the ſign [to] *ſtands between two Subſtantives, and then the latter may be rendred by the Dative Caſe, or* [to] *may be changed into* [of] *and the latter made by the Genitive Caſe, e. g.*

1. A good Prince is a *Father* to *his Country*.

2. Loyal Subjects are the ſtrongeſt Wall *to* Royalty.

3. God is a Father *to* thoſe that love him; he is a Father *to* the righteous, that fear him.

Reg. 5. Excipiuntur quæ in eodem caſu, &c.

Two Subſtantives coming together without [of] *between them, are both in the ſame Caſe, by appoſition.*

1. *Raſhneſs, the Picture* of a Fool, betrays a womaniſh mind.

2. Sloth, *the* Enemy of Men, uſually brings forth Theft.

3. Envy

3. Envy, *the* wrack of the Soul, brings forth murder, the deſtruction of the Body.

4. Paleneſs of the face, *the* token of bittereſt anger, ſheweth thirſt of revenge; pale rage is moſt dreadful.

Note, *From Subſtantives Maſculine in* [tor] *come Feminines in* [trix] (*may for the moſt part be made from thence;*) *from thoſe which end in* [us] *come Feminines in* [a], *which Feminines muſt be uſed, and not the Maſculines, when there went before a Subſtantive of the Feminine Gender, to which the latter hath relation, or with which the latter is the ſame; and uſually the Verb* [is] *ſtands between ſuch Subſtantives*, e. g.

1. *Death*, the *Enemy* of Nature, *is* a Friend to good men, whom it leadeth into Eternal Glory.

2. Courage for the moſt part, *is* a Conqueror.

3. Reſt *is* the repairer of ſtrength, a refreſher of the vital ſpirits.

4. Unwearied diligence oftentimes *is* an helper of a weak Wit; Art and Study mend Nature's defects.

Reg. 6. Adjectivum in Neutro genere, &c.

When Boys meet with a Subſtantive, having before it immediately an Adjective (*which intimates the quality of the Subſtantive*) as much, little, more, leſs, how much, ſo much, *and ſuch like, ſuch a Subſtantive muſt be the Genitive Caſe; and the Adjective put in the Neuter Gender, and taken for a Subſtantive.*

1. *Much labour* brings *more gains.*

2. How *much* ſwet, ſo *much* ſweetneſs.

3. He that hath a good ſtomach, doth not deſire *much* ſawce; a man of a weak ſtomach eats little meat.

4. A ſmall Shop ſometimes bringeth *much* profit.

Note, *Adjectives when their ſignification belongs to men, are often uſed in the Maſculine Gender, without the word* man *or* men, *expreſt in the* Latin; *and ſuch Adjectives may have another Adjective to agree with them.*

1. Honeſt *men* do not violate their promiſes.

2. A good *man*, that imitateth the Example of Chriſt, loveth thoſe that hate him.

3. Bloody

3. Bloody and deceitful *men*, dig their own Graves.

4 A wise *man* hateth him, that admireth his own Folly, which others laugh at.

Note, *Sometimes two Adjectives of contrary signification one to another, belong both to one Substantive, but the Substantive is not twice repeated in the* English; *nor must be expressed in* Latin, *but understood, and the latter Adjective must agree with the Substantive as the former doth.*

1. Bigger Boys strive to keep under the *less*, i. e. the less Boys.

2. A smaller Army often conquereth a greater.

Note, And *sometimes* [one] *supplieth the place of the Substantive after the latter Adjective, which* [one] *must have no* Latin *for it; only do with the Adjective, as if it were alone,* e. g.

1. A clean Book excelleth a dirty *one.*

2. A small Horse excelleth sometimes a bigger *one.*

Construction of Adjectives.

Adjectives govern a Genitive.

Reg. 1. ADjectiva quæ desiderium, notitiam, &c. *The sign* [of] *after Adjectives, betokening desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, forgetting, care, fear, guilt, or any passion of the mind, requires the Substantive* (*Noun or Pronoun*) *following, to be put in the Genitive Case,* e. g.

1. Those that are *desirous* of Honour, are studious of Learning, and of good manners.

2. He that is mindful of the Master's Commands, is not fearful of Punishment.

3. I will be mindful of thee, till I be forgetful of my self.

4. Thou and I are guilty of the same Crime, but we have a mild Master that often forgiveth.

5. The richest man, careless of his Affairs, is reduced to poverty.

6. I am clear from the Crime that thou mentionedst.

Reg. 2.

Reg. 2. Adjectiva Verbalia in ax, &c.

Adjectives ending in [ax] *derived of Verbs, and having* [of] *or* [in] *after them, require the Noun following to be put in the Genitive Case.*

1. He that is *bold of* heart, frighteth his Enemy, and escapeth danger; but the cowardly man is slain.

2. Most men are sagacious in their own profit; but who endeavoureth his Neighbour's good?

3. Fools are tenacious of their own intentions; they hear not the reason of the wise; they are not capable of admonition.

Reg. 3. Nomina Partitiva aut Partitivè posita, Interrogativa quædam, & certa numeralia, &c.

Reg. 4. Quibus addi possunt Comparativa & Superlativa, &c.

The Particles [of] *or* [among] *after Adjectives, which are call'd Partitives, betokening part or some one of more, after Interrogatives; such as ask a Question* [as which] [whether.] *after Nouns of Number* (*one, two, or three; first, second, third,*) *after Adjectives of the Comparative or Superlative degree, after all these* [of] *or* [among] *require the Substantive next following them, to be put in the Genitive Case; with which Genitive Case such Adjective governing, must agree in Gender,* e. g.

1. Thou hast chosen two Companions, *one* of which is a Fool, the *other* of them is idle, and they will make thee incapable of study, if thou imitate them.

2. It is a difficult thing, whether of the two parts shall I take.

3. He who is the most diligent among the Scholars, shall be the most excellent of them all.

4. Both thy Brother and thou art valiant; but thou art more couragious of the two.

5. None of the Heathenish gods delivered his Worshippers.

6. *Pylades* and *Orestes* cherished a mutual love; none knows whether was the more faithful of the two. Thou art my *Pylades*, the most trusty of all my Friends.

Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. In alio tamen ſenſu Ablat. exigunt cum Præpoſitione. In alio veru ſenſu Dat.

If a Noun of Number (an ordinal, first, second third, & Adverbs derived of them) have the ſign [to] *after it, the Noun following that ſign muſt be the Dative Caſe, if the Particle* [after] *it muſt be the Ablative, with* à *or* ab.

1. Thou who art ſecond to none in learning, yet ſitteſt fourth *after* my Brother, which I greatly wonder at. I am firſt *after* thee.

2. I love my Maſter beſt, next after God, who requireth my whole heart.

Exc. 2. Uſurpantur autem & cum, &c.

Sometimes [of] *or among, after Nouns Partitives, &c. is rendred by* è, ex *with an Ablative,* inter, ante *with an Accuſative.*

Reg 5. Interrogativum & ejus Redditivum, &c.

The Queſtion and the Anſwer muſt be made by the ſame Caſe of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, and the ſame Tenſe of a Verb that the Queſtion is asked by, e. g.

1. Q. *Who was it that went out?*
   A. My Siſter.
2. *Whoſe Book haſt thou?*
   My Couſin's.
3. *What have you loſt?*
   My Inkhorn.
4. *What are covetous men deſirous of?*
   A. Money.
5. *Of whom am I mindful?*
   A. Your ſelf.
6. *What did you in the School?*
   A. Learn my Leſſon, heard my Maſter's Inſtructions.
7. *What wilt thou do in this matter?*
   A. Vindicate my Father's honour.

Exc. Fallit hæc Regula, &c.

Sometimes the word [whoſe] *may be rendred in* Latin *by* cujus, ja, jum, *and in ſuch Caſe that Adjective muſt agree with the Subſtantive that ſtands with it in the Queſtion; and the*

e Substantive which is the Answer to it, must be the Geni-ive Case, e. g.

Q. *Whose Garment is this?*

A. My Father's.

Ext. 2. Aut per dictionem variæ, &c.

When a Question is asked by a word which hath divers Con-ructions, h. e. *when the Verb in the Question requires one Case the Noun that stands with it in the Question, and another that which is in the Answer, then the Substantives must be ch of them such as the Verb requires; not both the same ase.*

Q. *What fault doth my Father accuse me of?*

Cujus Criminis accusat me Pater?

A. Of most abominable things.

De Turpissimis.

Ext. 3. Fallit denique cum per possessiva, &c.

When the Answer to a Question is the English *of a Pronoun ssessive*, meus, tuus, suus, &c. *It must not be made by the me Case with the Interrogative word in the Question, but the me with a Noun Substantive therein, whatsoever it be, agree-g with it in Case, Gender, and Number*, e. g.

1. Q. *Whose Inkhorn hast thou?*

A. My own.

2. Q. *Whose Key is that?*

A. Thine.

3. Q. *Whose Paper do you take?*

A. Our own.

In Interrogative Sentences, the Accusative Case which must llow the Verb, or any other Case that must be governed of it, ually stands before both the Verb and its Nominative Case; the membrance of which will be helpful in rendring any of the rmer Examples.

Note, 1. *In Sentences where a Question is asked, if it be ked by a Verb only, and no Pronoun Interrogative in the Sen-nce, the Interrogative Conjunction* [nè] *must be added to the rb: But if there be a Pronoun Interrogative, then* [nè] *must t be joined to the Verb*, e. g.

1. Q. *What have you done?*

A. Made

A. Made our Exercise.

2. Q. *Hast thou lost thine Honour?*

A. I have lost it, but I will regain it.

But if there be in the Sentence [non] [nunquam], *or almost any other Adverb; or if there be not an Adverb, or other Pronoun beside an Interrogative,* [nè] *must not be joined to the Verb, but to the Adverb or Pronoun,* e. g.

Did not *Alexander* behave himself valiantly, who elope[d] leaped into a City amongst his Enemies, when his own Soldiers were not with him?

2. Q. *Wilt thou never cease to thirst after revenge, which dishonoureth a Christian?*

A. Christ commandeth to love our Enemies; and shall I, his Servant, despise my Master's Laws? I will hereafter obey.

Shall *this* Drunkard bewitch thee? Shall that Gamester entice thee?

And when [nè] *is to be joined to the Verb, the Nominative Case must always be after the Verb,* e. g.

1. Q. *Was* Cicero *the most Eloquent of Orators?*

2. Q. *Did* Virgil *excel the other* Latin *Poets?*

Adjectives governing a Dative Case.

Reg. 1. ADjectiva quibus commodum aut incommodum, &c.

Adjectives betokening profit or disprofit, meetness or unmeetness, pleasure or displeasure, submitting, relation, due, friendship, hatred, resistance, difficulty, likeness or unlikeness, nearness; if a Noun come after them, require it to be put in the Dative Case, e.g.

1. He that is guilty of Theft, and yet denies his Fault, is a Lyer, and is too like the Devil.

2. Virtue is pleasant to the Righteous, it is profitable to all that love it. How foolish are they that will not traverse pleasant paths?

3. Reverence is due to God, the King of all the World. Honour is due to Kings, because God hath commanded that we be obedient to them.

4.

4. He is near Death that is very sick, yet thinks himself well.

5. A loud Noise is inconvenient for Learners; it is prejudicial to study; it is hard for one Boy to learn, while another that sits next him bawls. A silent School is very helpful for Learning.

Etc. Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem significant, &c.

Par *and* similis *have sometime a Genitive Case of the Substantive coming after them; which yet is not to be imitated, and equally singular with the Dative.*

Natus, commodus, incommodus, &c.

Adjectives betokening profit, fitness, or aptness, commodus; *also* natus, habilis, promptus, opportunus, proclivis, assuetus, expositus, *when any of these have a Noun after them, which signifies the purpose, end, or thing* [to] *or* [for] *which they will rather have such a Noun to be put in the Accusative Case with* [ad]; *though the same adjectives, if a Noun or Pron noun follow, betokening a Person, require a Dative.*

1. I desire not to be near him, that is near to the top of wickedness.

2. That Servant is not *fit* for me, that is *unfit* for labour; he is convenient for me, that hath strength and understanding convenient for work.

3. He that is forward to Vice, is exposed to the Devil's temptation; for that Enemy of mankind is ready to mischief, and rejoiceth when he findeth a mind moveable to wickedness. It is a lamentable thing that men of excellent Wits are most prone to wickedness.

Reg. 2. Huc referuntur Nomina ex Con, &c.

2. *Nouns derived of* 9 *here, and beginning with* [con] *require a Dative Case of the Noun following them.*

Many were *Fellow-Soldiers* with Jason, when he fetch'd the Golden Fleece; many were Companions with him, but he bore away the glory of the Enterprize.

Note, Communis *hath usually after it a Dative, rarely a Genitive; and when two Persons or Things follow it, with*

[and]

[and] *between them, that* [and] *must not be made by* [&], *but by* cum *with an Ablative.*

Death is common *to me and thee*, to men *and* women, to young *and* old. The Grave is an House common to all Creatures.

Note, 4. Alienus, immunis, proprius, *and* superstes *require a Dative Case after them, sometimes* (*but seldom*) *a Genitive; and sometimes* alienus *and* immunis *an Ablative, with a Preposition* [a] *or* [ab] *Boys may indifferently make the Dative or Ablative.*

1. A Conscience *free* from Guilt, laughs at false Accusers; Fear is proper to Offenders.

2. Glory survives good men, Death taketh not their Crown away. Let us not therefore practise wickedness, as if we were desirous after ignominy and disgrace, the offspring of sin. We were born to greater things; we have Souls capable of happiness; let us embrace Virtue, which will make happy whilst we live, and for ever; but some men will always be far from noble desires, let them have their sought ruin.

Adjectives governing an Accusative Case.

Reg. 1. MAgnitudinis mensura subjicitur, &c.

The Substantive betokening measure, and which usually in English *comes before* (*seldom after*) *these Adjectives, long, hard, thick, high, deep, big; such Substantive must be put in the Accusative Case, to be governed of the Adjective.*

A Well fifty foot deep giveth not good Water, if it have bad Springs.

2. The Walls of *Babylon*, a City of *Chaldea*, were two hundred foot high; some write that they were three hundred foot, and seventy five foot thick.

3. A Walk an hundred Yards long, and five Yards broad, which hath Trees planted on each side, is pleasant for those that would recreate themselves.

Exc. 1. Interdum & in Ablativo, &c.

The word of measure *or* quantity *is sometimes put in the Ablative Case, seldom in the Genitive.*

Adjectives

Adjectives govern an Ablative Case.

Reg. 1. ADjectiva, quæ ad Copiam, egestatemve pertinent, &c.

Adjectives that betoken plenty or wanting, as poor, destitute, empty, full, rich, void, and such like, which have after them the sign [of] *or* [in] *require the Noun following such signs to be put into the Ablative Case.*

1. He whose Bags are empty of Money, hath an House empty of Friends, and a Coat full of Rents.

2. The Court, which is full of Flatterers, is pernicious to a Prince; though he be rich in substance, abundant in honours.

3. A Journey an hundred miles long, wearieth an Horse that hath not his Belly moderately full of Provender; for while he is desirous of Meat, he goeth slowly; but if a strong and well-fed Horse refuse to put forth his strength, a Whip and Spur make him mindful of his Work and Duty. Lazines hath need of Spurs.

Exc. Interdum & Genitivo, &c.

The Genitive Case is many times read after such Adjectives, and Boys may do the like; but they are rather in Prose to be accustomed to the confinement of the Ablative.

Reg. 2. Nomina diversitatis Ablativum, &c.

The English *word* [diverse] *or* [different] *rendred in* Latin *by* alter, alius, *or* diversus, *require the Substantive following, whether Noun or Pronoun, to be put in the Ablative Case, with the Preposition* [a] *or* [ab].

1. My Brother is of a very bad Nature, and far *different* from my Father, who is of a good Disposition, and rich in good endowments of Mind, though poor in Estate.

2. Children are not always like their Parents; they are sometimes quite *different* from them.

Reg. 2. Nonnunquam etiam Dativum, &c.

Rule 2. Diversus *for different, hath sometimes a Dative. Woman contrary to this.*

Reg. 3. Adjectiva regunt Ablativum, &c.

Rule 3. *Adjectives govern an Ablative Case of the word, that signifies the Instrument* [wherewith], *the cause* [why] *or the manner* [how] *a thing is done.*

1. My Master's Face was greatly changed, when he found his only beloved Son guilty of a Lye; it was sometimes *pale with* anger, afterwards it *was red* with heat of fury; and in the mean time his Son was trembling *for* fear of punishment.

2. He that is only a Christian in pretence, who in the mean while is an Hypocrite in heart, is an Enemy to his own Soul; for though he be subtile at dissimulation amongst men, he shall not deceive the Almighty.

Reg. 4. Forma vel modus rei, &c.

Rule 1. *Substantives also have sometimes after them an Ablative of another Substantive, which betokens the manner how, or the reason why the former is, or is called such.*

My Master hath been a Father for wholsome Counsel; he that is my Parent by Nature, and whose Son I am by Birth, took not more care of me. But I have been a Servant in name, but a Rebel in deed.

Reg. 5. Dignus, indignus, præditus, &c.

Rule 5. *Adjectives which have usually after them the sign* [of] *or* [with] *or* [upon] *require the Substantive following them to be the Ablative Case.*

1. Those are unworthy of the Glory of Heaven, that do not think Virtue worthy of love, who are not content with the pleasure that Virtue giveth.

2. I relying upon thy honesty, neglected mine own safety; for thou void of that, deceivedst me.

3. A Son endowed with excellent wit, rejoiceth his Father, whose good example he imitateth, whose command he observeth; he is never trembling for fear, for he provoketh not his Father's anger; he is always mindful of his duty; he is like a Staff to his Father's old Age.

Nota, Horum Nonnulla Genitivum, &c.

Note, *In Authors*, dignus *and* indignus, *are sometimes read with a Genitive Case after them; but that's not for the Boys imitation, (only they may need to understand it) therefore we give no Examples of that Government.* R

Reg. 6. Comparativa cum exponuntur, &c.

Rule 6. *Adjectives of the comparative degree, that have* [in] [by] *or* [than] *after them; if the* Latin *word* [quam] for [than] *be left out, require the Substantive following to be put in the ablative case*; e. g.

1. Thy leſſer Brother is *more learned than* thou *by* far, he is wiſer *than* his Teachers *by* many degrees.

2. My Book is cleaner *than* thine *by* much, and yet thine is newer *than* mine.

Note, 1. *If* [quam] *be expreſt in the* Latin *for the* Engliſh *word* [than], *then the word following* [than] *muſt be of ſuch Caſe as the Subſtantive which went before the Comparative Adjective.*

1. Thy Father is richer *than* mine, and thou wilt have a greater Portion *than* I; nevertheleſs I am content with mine own Condition, I am not deſirous of thy Wealth, becauſe I deſire Virtue, which (I think) is better *than* Riches.

2. He that hath a good Conſcience, is more ſafe *than* a City encompaſſed with Walls; for a calm mind will bear more Tempeſts *than* the ſtrongeſt Bulwark.

Note, 2 [Than] *muſt ſometimes be made only by* [quam] (*not by the Ablative, and* [quam] *left out*); viz. *when the Subſtantive which follows* [than] *is not compared with that which went next before the Comparative Adjective, or with which the Comparative Adjective agrees, but with ſomething at a farther diſtance from it*; e. g.

1. My Father hath an handſomer Horſe than your Father; he bought him yeſterday.

2. My Brother is like my Uncle in the ſhape of his face, and in the colour of his hair; but he is very unlike in his manners; he is the moſt wicked of all our Family; he is prone to all Vices, accuſtomed to all Evils, unworthy of my Father's love; relying upon my Mother's over-love and bounty; he ſpendeth money laviſhly; he acts as if he were void of reaſon; he underſtandeth nothing beſide hypocriſy; for whilſt he is ſo bad indeed, he is a Saint in appearance; no man is of a baſer Diſpoſition than he; none committeth greater faults *than* he.

Reg. 7. Adjectiva pretii regunt Ablat.

Rule 7. *Adjectives whose signification betoken Buying or Selling, such as* dear, cheap, *&c. whose* English *hath after it* [at] [of] *or* [for], *require an Ablative case after them.*

1. A poor Cottage, *dear* of Twenty shillings, many times contains a man *of* great Virtue; and a man *of* small Estate hath often a contented mind.

2. A Garment *cheap at* an hundred pounds, sometimes covers a man whose Wit were *dear* at a Groat. Virtue and Wisdom are better Ornament than gay Clothes.

Reg. 8. Adject. proprietatem, vel passionem corporis & animi denotantia, reg. ablat.

Rule 8. *Adjectives signifying some* property *or* passion *of* body *or* mind, *require the Substantive following next them, to be put in the Ablative Case*; e. g.

1. A valiant Soldier, that exposeth his life for the sake of his Sovereign, beareth the strokes of his Enemies; he is sometimes *wounded* in his Head and Limbs; he is sometimes *sick* of a *Fever*, but he is never *feeble* in *mind*, though he be *weak* in *body*; courage remaineth, when *strength* is lost.

2. A good Man is unquiet in his mind, whilst he taketh notice of other mens sins; he desireth the happiness of those that neglect their own; they are slow of heart, and see not; they are void of understanding; they desire none of God's Commandments; they pray not; but God sometimes heareth the Prayers of the righteous for them.

Constructions of Pronouns.

Reg. 1. HÆC Possessiva meus, tuus, suus, &c.

Rule 1. *The* English *words* [my] *or* [mine], [thy] *or* [thine], [our] *or* [your], *when they note Possession, must be rendred by the Possessive Pronouns*, meus, tuus, noster, vester; *but when they may with as good sense be turned into* [of me], [of thee] *&c. and it is indifferent in the* English, *which you use; yet it is not alike in* Latin, *but must be rendred by the Genitive Case of the Primitive*; e. g.

1. My

1. My Picture is not like me.

2. That is indeed *thine* Image, becauſe thou boughteſt it; but it is not the Image *of thee*, it is more beautiful than *thy* face by many degrees.

3. Thy deſire of me is ſtronger than *my* deſire of thee; thou loveſt me, becauſe I am profitable to thee; but thou art unworthy of my love, becauſe thou art void of all Virtue.

Reg. 2. Noſtrum & veſtrum, &c.

Rule 2. Noſtrum *and* veſtrum, *not* noſtri *and* veſtri, *are uſed in the Genitive Caſe Plural, after Adjectives which govern a Genitive Caſe, eſpecially Paratives, Comparatives, and Superlatives*; e. g.

1. The younger of us is more learned than the elder of you, who are never mindful of your duty.

2. Every one of you will be puniſhed, but each of us ſhall be praiſed; you all deſpiſe the School Laws, but we obſerve them.

Reg. 3. Sui & ſuus reciproca, &c.

Rule 3. *The ſeveral Caſes of the Pronoun Primitive* [ſui] *are uſed for the* Engliſh *word* [him] *or* [them], *when the Particle* [ſelf] *or* [ſelves], *is either joined to* [him] *or* [them], *or is underſtood, and may be expreſs'd; and the Poſſeſſive* ſuus *for* [his] *or* [their] *when* [own] *is or may be with it*; e. g.

1. Every man loveth thoſe that are like *himſelf*, and deſpiſeth thoſe that are hurtful to *him*: Nature teacheth to love our Friends, but Religion teacheth to love our Enemies.

2. My Father ſold *his own* Horſe, and neglected his Journey which he deſigned, becauſe my Mother is ſick of a Fever, and we fear her Death; my Father teſtifieth greateſt love; he is always near her, and bewaileth her Sickneſs ſo greatly, that we fear my Father's Death alſo. Sorrow is an heavy burden, which ſometimes killeth *him* that ſuffereth it.

Note, *When the Particles* [ſelf], [ſelves], *or* [own] *neither are, nor may be added, then* [*his*] *is made by* [ejus], [*their*] *by* [eorum]; *the Genitive Caſe* [eum], [eos], *for* [*him*] *or them*;

1. All men hate *his* manners, who ſpeaketh that which he doth not think.

Some are more prone to Vice than others, and ſome ſtrive more to conceal thoſe Vices that they commit, than others; hypocrites ſin ſecretly, men ſee not their wickedneſs; but God ſeeth their hypocriſy, the moſt private of all ſins, and will puniſh *them*.

3. God blaſteth his Eſtate that deſpiſeth his Parents; Providence doth not proſper their labours, that neglect their beſt Friends.

Rule 4. [Ipſe] *and* [idem] *are of all Perſons, according to the Perſon of the Noun or Pronoun to which they belong.*

Reg. 5. Ille tuum uſurpatur, &c.

Rule 5. [Ille] *is uſed for* he *or* that, *when we ſpeak of any Perſon or thing with reſpect*; [iſte] *when we ſpeak of* him *or* that *which we deſpiſe*; e. g.

1. I ſcorn *him* that behaveth himſelf proudly; but I admire him, who though he be great and rich, yet is of humble behaviour.

2. Who doth not laugh at that Man's folly, *that* deſpiſeth *that* honour which great actions procure, which the praiſe of wiſe men giveth, and only deſireth to obtain the ſhouts of the unconſtant Common people, whoſe words are more vain than the Wind, who quickly hate the ſame man that before they loved?

Reg 6. Hic & ille cum ad duo Antepoſita, &c.

Rule 6. *When in a former Sentence, we have occaſion to mention two Subſtantives, (either perſons or things) and afterwards would ſpeak ſomething concerning them by theſe expreſſions,* [this], [that], [the one], [the other], [the former], [the latter]; *in ſuch ſentences* [this], the one, the latter, *muſt be rendred by* hic, *to have reſpect to the latter Subſtantive mentioned,* [that]; the other, the former *by* ille, *to refer to the firſt mentioned, and to agree with them in Gender accordingly*; e. g.

1. Virtue and Vice divide the whole world between them; *this* hath a greater part, but *that* is the more deſirable; *the one* deceiveth, *the other* maketh happy; *the former*

former giveth true pleaſure, *the latter* bringeth aſſured miſery.

2. Wilt thou chuſe Wiſdom rather than Folly? *The one* will make thee honourable, *the other* procures contempt: Hard ſtudy and induſtry procure Wiſdom; labour thou therefore, otherwiſe after many years inſtruction, thou ſhalt be a fool.

Conſtruction of Verbs.

Verbs requiring a Nominative Caſe.

Reg. 1. VErba Subſtantiva, ſum, forem, fio, &c.

Rule 1. *Verbs Subſtantive*, ſum, forem, fio, exiſto: *Verbs Paſſive of calling*; *as* nominor, appellor, dicor, vocor, nuncupor, ſcribor, ſalutor, habeor, exiſtimor, putor, videor, naſcor, *require a Nominative Caſe of the Noun following them.*

1. Our Maſter *is* diligent, but I have been hitherto an idle Boy; I have imitated the Example of Drones; I have loſt my Parents love, who always provided all things neceſſary for me; I have been unworthy of their care; but I will deſerve *to be called* the moſt diligent of all the Scholars for the time to come.

2. The Lion *is* accounted the moſt generous of Beaſts, becauſe he is more placable than others; Men fear his roaring, but he ſeemeth merciful, for he hurteth not his Enemy ſubmitting. The bloody minds of many men are more barbarous than wild Beaſts.

3. Man is a Creature of upright Body: He walketh upright whilſt he *is* in his Journey; when Night cometh, he lieth flat, and ſleepeth; when old Age diminiſheth his ſtrength, his Body bendeth downwards towards the Earth; at length he leaveth his earthly part in the Grave, and his Soul aſcendeth to Heaven, where he dwelleth for ever.

Reg. 2. Infinitum quoque utrinque eoſdem caſus, &c.

Rule 2. *Any of thoſe Verbs, if they be put into the Infinitive Mood, require the ſame Caſe after, which they had next before them*; tho' *it be a Dative, Accuſative, or Ablative*; e. g.

Silence makes a man to be esteemed wise; Talkativeness causeth a Pratler to be thought foolish.

Reg. 2. Denique omnia fere verba, &c.

Rule 3. *Any Verb must have a Nominative Case after it, if an Adjective come next to it, which agrees with the Nominative Case to the Verb*; e. g.

1. I came *first*, and therefore I was praised, and shall be well rewarded; thou, who always comest *last*, losest thine honour, and art reckoned a sluggard.

2. Hypocrites pray *loud*; but the silent requests of the Righteous are heard; their desires shall be satisfied, while Hypocrites with all their pretended Piety shall perish.

Note, *An Adverb* (*ending in* [ly] *coming after a Verb*) *may sometimes elegantly be rendred by an Adjective of the Nominative Case*; e. g.

1. He that learneth *deligently*, shall soon excel his idle Companions, that play always.

2. A good Man dieth *willingly*, because he hath lived *piously*. An honest Life causeth a quiet Death; but he that is mindful of past wickedness, feareth *Eternity*.

The pleasures of Sin then yield no refreshment; the expectation of future Torment is dreadful to a guilty Soul, which despiseth Heaven before, and shall lose it irreparably.

Verbs Personal governing a Genitive.

Reg. 1. SUM Genitivum postulat, &c.

The Verb Sum, *when it betokens the* Part, Duty, Property, *or* Possession, *requires the Noun following to be put in the Genitive Case.*

1. The Earth is the *Lord's*.

2. 'Tis the *Duty* of Children to observe Instruction.

3. 'Tis the *Part* of Fools to laugh always.

4. 'Tis the Wise-man's *Property* to hold his peace.

5. 'Tis the *Part* of Kings to defend their Subjects; it is the *Duty* of Subjects to be obedient to Kings: The World would perish without Government and Order.

Exc. 1. Excipiuntur hi Nominativi, meum, &c.

1. *If*

1. *If the Engliſh of any of the Pronouns poſſeſſives come after* Sum, *without a Subſtantive coming after them, ſuch Pronoun muſt not be the Genitive Caſe, but muſt agree in Caſe, Gender, and Number, with the Nominative Caſe to the Verb.*

1. That Prayer was *mine*, but now it is *my* Brother's.

2. The Kingdom of Heaven is theirs that are poor in Spirit; it ſhall be ours if we obſerve God's holy Commandments; let us be mindful of our Duty, ready to every good work; let us live *Soberly*, *Righteouſly*, and *Godly*.

Exc. 2. At hic ſubintelligi videtur officium, &c.

2. *If with the Engliſh of the Pronoun poſſeſſive, be joined the word* Duty, Part, *or* Property, *the Pronoun muſt be the Nominative Caſe; and always the Neuter Gender.*

1. It is thy *Duty* to do whatſoever *thy* Father commandeth.

2. It is every ones *part* to look to himſelf. The World is full of Enemies, and all men have need of Caution. It is our *part* to exerciſe the greateſt Prudence.

Other Pronouns, as Relatives, Interrogatives, Compound Pronouns, &c. *have the Conſtruction of Nouns,* i. e. *are put in the Genitive Caſe.*

1. Let us love God, *whoſe* we are.

2. It is not any one's place to remove others, but theirs that are unblameable.

Note, *Sometimes the Engliſh of a Subſtantive which ought to be the Genitive Caſe governed of* ſum, *may be turned into an Adjective derived of the Subſtantive*; e. g.

It is the part of a Woman, muliebre eſt, *or* mulieris. *It is the part of a Man*, virile eſt, *or* viri.

Reg. 2. Verba æſtimandi Genitivo gaudent.

2. *Verbs of valuing, eſteeming, or making account of, require a Genitive Caſe of that word which betokens the price or value of the thing, and which tells us at what rate, or how much.*

1. Thoſe value *the honour* of God *at nothing*, that call themſelves Chriſtians, and deſire to be accounted Saints; but in the mean while are like Beaſts, and are given to all Vices.

2. *Riches* are esteemed *little*, when men see better things. The light of the Sun dimmeth the lesser shining of a Candle.

3. I value not him *a rush*, that is a Friend to every body.

Exc. Æstimo vel Genitivum, &c.

2. *But the Verb* Æstimo *it self will have either a Genitive, or an Ablative of the value.*

1. I have a Horse that I value *at forty pounds.*

2. I esteem a faithful Friend *at a great price.*

Reg. 3. Verba accusandi, damnandi, &c.

3. *Verbs of accusing, condemning, blaming, admonishing acquitting, or clearing, will have a Genitive of the crime or thing, which crime hath commonly* of, for, *or* from *before it, in the English.*

1. One Boy accuseth *another of Idleness*; the Master heareth their Tales, but punisheth only those whom he thinketh guilty, and worthy of punishment.

2. The Master's praise maketh some Boys diligent, it moveth them greatly; sometimes when he passeth by faults, his Clemency perswaded them to love him, and to observe his Laws, which are good for them. Kindly to warn ingenuous minds of their faults, frequently reduceth them to obedience without severity.

3. When a Murderer obtaineth a Pardon, he escapeth the Gallows, but he is not cleared *from* guilt; but Saints receiving Remission *of* Sins, become guiltless in the sight *of* God, as if they had not sinned. The Blood of Christ washeth defiled Souls.

Exc. Vertitur hic Genitivus, &c.

Sometimes the Crime is put in the Ablative Case, sometimes with, but usually without a Preposition.

Exc. 2. Uterque, Nullus, Alter, Neuter, &c.

If the English of any of these words, viz. Uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo; *or of an Adjective of the Superlative degree which hath no Substantive with it, come after Verbs of accusing,* &c. *the* Latin *of these words must never be in any other but the Ablative Case.*

1. Our

1. Our Man-ſervant was accuſed of Theft, and of Drunkenneſs, but he denied; whiles in the mean time he was guilty of both; and his lying clear'd him *of neither.*

2. A guilty Conſcience hath no need of Witneſſes; it accuſeth it ſelf *of moſt heinous things*; the Man is miſerable, whom Conſcience condemneth.

3. Q. *Of what Crime art thou convicted?*

A. Of none.

Q. *Of what Duty did our Maſter admoniſh our Form when I was abſent? Did he admoniſh of diligence about our Studies, or of Godlineſs?*

A. Of both.

Reg. 4. Satago, miſereor, miſereſcor, &c.

And Verbs of remembring and forgetting, require the Noun following to be the Genitive Caſe of the perſon or thing pitied, remembred, or forgotten

1. *I pity my Brother, I pity his folly*; for he hath waſted all the Portion which my Father left; and now he begs from door to door.

2. I remember the report that I heard, but I do not regard it; he that feareth miſery before that it come, forgetteth his own manhood, and becometh like a Child.

3. A Judge, whoſe Sentence accuſeth him of injuſtice, is unprofitable to his Country. A juſt Judge remembreth mercy and juſtice together, he never forgetteth right Law; but never condemneth the Innocent.

Note, 1. Reminiſcor, Obliviſcor, Memini, &c. *are read alſo with an Accuſative after them*

Note, 2. Memini *ſometimes ſignifies to make mention of, and hath then an Ablative after it, with the Prepoſition* de.

Reg. 5. Potior aut Genitivo aut Ablativo, &c.

5. Potior *to obtain or get Poſſeſſion of, governs either an Ablative or a Genitive.*

1. A Scholar that *obtaineth* his Maſter's *favour*, is more happy than he that is idle, who loſeth his honour, waſteth his time, and continueth a Blockhead, though play be pleaſant to him a little while.

2. He that remembreth instructions, getteth profit; he that forgetteth them, obtaineth no advantage. It is the Duty of Boys to attend whilst Masters teach; labour spent in vain, wearieth the most industrious and strongest Workman; but work succeeding according to expectation, delighteth.

Verbs Personal governing a Dative Case.

Reg. 1. OMnia Verba acquisitivè posita, *&c.*

All Verbs govern a Dative Case after them, of the Noun which hath to *or* for *before it*; e. g.

1. He is of a low and ignoble Spirit, that only *lives for himself*, and not for his Friends; we were born for the publick good; generous men are forward to all works profitable for the Commonwealth; they neglect themselves in comparison of the Country.

2. The wicked layeth a snare *for* the man that is more righteous than him; but God *careth for* his Servants, and preserveth to them their lives; he layeth up Everlasting Happiness *for* them.

Exc. *Verbs betokening motion or readiness with* [to] *after them, require an Accusative always with the Preposition* [ad.]

1. He that playeth, when he ought *to go to School*, indureth severest punishments, and besides findeth his labour more wearisome, when he returneth to his Study, because of his past idleness.

2. Man hasteneth to his end; whilst he is strong of body, and sprightly in mind, he is many times near his Death; innumerable dangers encompass him, one of which bringeth him *to* the Grave; the longest life is short.

Exc. 2. *Verbs of exhorting, provoking, inclining, calling, belonging, and* loquor, *have also an Accusative after them with* ad, *never a Dative.*

1. God *inviteth* Sinners to *Eternal Happiness*, he calleth them to repentance: He speaketh most graciously unto them; he hath prepared for penitent Sinners all things that belong to blessedness, all things that they can desire;

ſire; but their hearts are hard; all Arguments move not until God's appointed time.

2. Remember, Oh fooliſh Boys, your Maſter's words; *he exhorteth* you to induſtry, which is beneficial to your ſelves; your pains ſhall produce great gains; he ſpendeth his own ſtrength for your benefit; be not your own Enemies.

Reg. 2. Imprimis Verba ſignificantia, &c.

2. *Verbs of profiting, helping, pleaſing, and the contrary to them, require a Dative Caſe after them.*

1. He that only *pleaſeth* himſelf, doth not profit himſelf, but prejudiceth his own honour and happineſs, becauſe he diſpleaſeth God his Creator, who calleth his Servants to abſtinence, and denial of themſelves.

2. A Blockhead anſwereth not the care of his Maſter, who waſteth his ſtrength in vain, whilſt he teacheth a Boy, whoſe underſtanding is uncapable of learning; Parents accuſe the Teacher of neglect, becauſe they ſee no proficiency; but though Fools by Nature ſometimes become wiſe by Art and Education, yet every mind is not brought to wiſdom.

Exc. Lædo, offendo, *to hurt, and* delecto, *to delight, will have always an Accuſative Caſe after them, and alſo the* Engliſh *Verbs*, tend, avail, conduce, *make* to *or* for *an Accuſative with the Preposition* ad.

1. The School *delighteth* diligent Boys; *for* in it they have a good Maſter that teacheth them; they have good Books, which they read; they have beloved Schoolfellows, whoſe mutual Societies helpeth their Studies; they are free from dangers, to which Boys playing are expoſed; they are not near thoſe Evil Examples that intice idle Boys; they get virtue and wiſdom, which they eſteem more excellent than play.

2. Temperance conduceth to length of Life, it maketh *for* the preſervation of health; Luxury pleaſeth the Palate, but it offendeth the Stomach; which when laden with various Meats, turns not them all into nouriſhment, but into matter of Diſeaſes; from intemperance

rance proceed *Headaches*, *Fevers*, *Apoplexies*, *Consumptions*, and almost all kinds of Diseases; a Glutton hasteth more swiftly than others to his Grave.

Reg. 3. Verba comparandi, &c.

3. *Verbs of comparing or equalling require* (*besides an Accusative of the thing or person compared*) *a Dative of the Noun next following them, which hath* [to] *or* [with] *before it.*

1. If the longest life be *compared* to Eternity, it is very short; if the happiest condition be *compared* with Heaven, it is miserable, and not worthy of our desires; Earthly happiness sometimes does harm; but Heaven is altogether desirable.

2. If we *compare* the number of good men to the multitude of the wicked, it is small; though they shall be increased, they shall never be made *equal* with them; the Enemies of God will be more numerous than his Servants.

Note, *Sometimes the Ablative Case with* cum, *sometimes the Accusative with* ad, *is found after Verbs of* comparing.

Reg. 4. Verba dandi & reddendi, &c.

3. *Verbs betokening* to give, restore, *and* return, (*when it is a Verb active*) *require an Accusative Case of the* thing *given, and a Dative of the person* [*to whom*] e. g.

Give ye those things to *Cæsar*, which are *Cæsar*'s, unto God the things which be God's; God will *give* those men reward that please him, and those whom he hath set up Governors of the World. He that rebelleth against Princes displeaseth God.

2. *I returned* my Master the Book which I borrowed. He lent it me, and it was my duty to read it, not to keep it; though Books delight me very much, I ought to *restore* them to the Owners; the *Fables* pleased my fancy, the *Phrases* conduced to my advantage; he willingly *giveth* me any thing that maketh for my good; what Friend shall I compare with him, who is always ready to my assistance?

Reg. 5. Hæc varium habent, &c.

5. *Some Verbs govern after them different Cases*, as dono, a Da-

a Dative of the Person, and Accusative of the Thing; *or an Accusative of the Person, and Ablative of the Thing*; insterno *the same*, tempero, moderor, *a Dative or an Accusative*; scribo, mitto; *a Dative or Accusative with* ad; Consulo *to give Counsel*, *a Dative*; *to ask Counsel an Accusative*; *and many others*, *some in the same signification*, *some in a different sense*, *which may be learned more fully by experience.*

Reg. 6. Verba promittendi, solvendi, fidendi, &c.

6. *Verbs betokening to* owe, promise or pay, *and Verbs of* believing, crediting, committing, *govern a Dative Case after them, of the person to whom, with an Accusative of the thing.*

1. I *owe* him Money, because I promised to *pay* to him another Man's Debt; but at present I my self have need of Money, that I may *pay* my own Creditors, whom I will *pay* first.

2. Thou hast often promised, but I will never *believe* thee; it is a dangerous thing for any to break his Promise; for no body will *believe* him afterwards; his words are unworthy of credit that once deceiveth.

3. Our Blessed Saviour, Jesus Christ, *paid* the Debt which we had contracted; it is a most righteous thing that we please him, who hath redeemed us; let us return him the greatest praises, let his Precepts delight us, let his blameless Life be our Example.

4. Thy Mind is like a Sieve; I will not commit secrets to thy trust; thou hast promised secrecy, but thou forgettest thy Promise. I pity thy imprudence; thou wilt never obtain the love of thy Friends, if thou be guilty of that folly. He that betrayeth his own Secrets is a Fool; but he that revealeth his Friend's Counsels, is treacherous, most worthy of hatred.

Reg. 7. Verba imperandi & nunciandi, &c.

7. *Verbs of* commanding (*except* Jubeo) *Verbs of* telling *or* speaking *to* (*except* loquor) *must have after them a Dative Case of the person, and an Accusative of the thing.*

1. God commanded *Abraham* the Father of the Faithful,

ful, to ſacrifice *Iſaac* his only Son; he willingly returned the promiſed Seed to him that gave it; but the Angel of God ſuffered not him to ſlay his Child, but told him how acceptable his deſigned obedience was to God.

2. God ſpeaketh to Sinners ſometimes moſt gently, that he may draw them to obedience; he tells them of that bleſſed life, which he hath prepared for his Servants; ſometimes he ſpeaketh more terrible things, and tells them of the Abyſs which ſhall be the reward of ſin; yet his Promiſes and Threatnings move not ſtubborn minds.

Reg. 8. Verba Obſequendi, Repugnandi, &c.

8. *Verbs of* obeying, meeting, helping, (*except* juvo) reſiſting, ſubmitting, *require the Subſtantive following* (*whether a perſon or thing*) *to be put in the Dative Caſe.*

1. He that reſiſteth his own evil inclination, obeyeth God: The Captain that conquereth a ſtubborn Enemy, is worthy of Laurel; but he that ſubdueth himſelf, is worthy of greater praiſe; for man's heart is more obſtinate than the proudeſt foe.

2. They that diſagree with their Neighbours procure to themſelves much hatred; quarrels profit no body, they hurt all men; peace is the moſt deſirable of bleſſings; a man of a good ſpirit meeteth his Enemy without hatred, and returneth him kindneſs inſtead of revenge.

Note, Repugno *to reſiſt, governs a Dative Caſe.* Oppugno *of the ſame ſignification an Accuſative.*

Reg. 9. Verba minandi & iraſcendi, &c.

9. [Iraſcor] *to be angry with, governs a Dative Caſe,* [Minor *to threaten*] *a Dative of the perſon, and an Accuſative of the judgment or puniſhment threatned with.*

1. God is *angry with* the wicked, and *threatneth them* with moſt dreadful torments; it is not an unjuſt thing that thoſe who offend an Infinite God of infinite goodneſs, ſuffer endleſs miſery; thoſe Sinners are happy whom God *meeteth*, and ſtoppeth in the way of wickedneſs.

2. I am *angry* at thy ſloth, beware leſt thou feel the puniſh-

punishment which I *threatned* thee with; Offenders are most worthy of recompence.

Reg. 10. [Ignosco], [pareo], indulgeo, *govern always a Dative, and no other Case*; [remitto] *signifying* to *pardon, or forgive, hath always relation to a fault or offence mentioned after it, and requires that word of the offence to be made always in the Accusative Case; and if besides that, a person be expresst, the person must be the Dative.*

1. A merciful Prince *pardoneth disobedient Subjects*; but if they pay him not due thanks, and resist his will afterward, they are called ungrateful; and though he forgave the former offence, yet he will not *pardon* them their ingratitude, for they are unworthy of his Clemency. The gracious Prince, whose heart is full of mercy, yet sometimes punisheth, lest his patience incourage Offenders to greater attempts.

2. A Master passeth by the Scholar's neglect; but if he always *forgive* him, at length he becometh bold, and uncapable of amendment; the best amongst Boys transgresseth; but Crimes often repeated, are signs of a stubborn mind.

Reg. 1. Sum cum compositis, &c.

11. Sum *requires a Dative Case after it, of the Noun following it, which hath* to *or* for *before it, and sometimes when such sign is not expres'd, so that the Noun following it, seems to be the Nominative, the Nominative may be turned into a Dative.*

1. Virtue *is for an* Ornament; no part of Beauty is wanting *to* him that is endowed with it.

2. A Wall is a defence, but the Courage of the Inhabitants is the strongest Bulwark.

Reg. 12. Dativum postulant Verba, &c.

12. *Verbs compounded with the Adverbs*, satis, bene, malè, *and the Prepositions*, præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter, super, *require a Dative Case after them.*

1. I *prefer* Virtue *before Gold*, because it is better by much; Money cannot satisfy the minds of men, but Virtue is a portion to it self.

2. Cruel

2. Cruel Lords lay heavy burthens upon their Slaves and never pity their weakneſs.

3. He that putteth a feeble Horſe under an heavy Load is an enemy to himſelf: for his Horſe will be wearied, and the Burthen will be left in the Road.

4. Vice creepeth upon us under the name of Virtue; prodigality taketh to it ſelf the name of bounty; covetouſneſs deſireth to be called thriftineſs; cruelty exerciſeth its bitterneſs under the ſhew of magnanimity: revenge ſeems like greatneſs of ſpirit; pride calleth it ſelf neatneſs; all Vices ſometimes bear the ſhew of Virtue.

The Sun ſhineth without difference upon the juſt and unjuſt; but the juſt have the light of God's Countenance, which yieldeth them greater comfort than the enlightning of the day.

Exc. 1. Sed præeo, prævinco, præcedo, &c.

1. Præeo, prævinco, præcedo, præcurro, præverto, will *have an Accuſative*, Allatro, anteſto, attendo, condono, illudo, inſulto, præſtolor, *a Dative or an Accuſative.*

1. That Scholar that excelleth his Companion, ſhall ſtand before him.

2. God preventeth the Deſigns of Men, many times they act things quite contrary to that which they purpoſed.

3. *Envious Zoilus* barketh at famous Men, that merit praiſe, and excel him; but the lofty Spirit mocks at Envy.

Exc. 2. Confero, conduco, accedo, applico, converto, *govern rather an Accuſative with* ad, *than a Dative*; e. g.

1. He that cometh near to God, receiveth the good things which he asketh.

2. He that turneth his Affections from the folly of Sin, to the wiſdom of Righteouſneſs, is wiſe.

3. A Phyſician applieth different Remedies to different Bodies; the ſame Medicine that eaſeth one man, prejudiceth another, though he be ſick of the ſame Diſeaſe.

Exc. 3. Aſpicio, invenio, admiror, alloquor, adjuvo, invado,

nvado, obeo, ſubeo, occido, adjuro, impedio, *require only an Accuſative Caſe after them*, e. g.

1. He that findeth Wiſdom, is richer than the greateſt Prince.

2 Princes greedy of Glory, *invade* Foreign Countries; but thoſe that are content with their own Kingdoms, live moſt quietly.

3. Some men not only deſpiſe the Law of God, but hinder others, that ſeem forward to virtue; they are of deviliſh wickedneſs, that not only deſtroy themſelves, but are like the Devil, becauſe they tempt others, and invite them to Eternal Miſery.

Exc. 4. Interdico [*to forbid*] *governs a Dative of the Perſon, and Ablative of the thing*, Superſedeo *only an Ablative*, *Reg.* 12. Eſt pro habeo Dativum, &c.

Rule 12. *When you find the* Engliſh *word* have, *which ſeems as if it ought to be made by* habeo, *you may make uſe of the Verb* ſum, es, fui, *inſtead of* habeo; *and then the word that ſeems to be the Nominative Caſe to* habeo, *muſt be the Dative, governed of* ſum; *and the word which ſhould have been the Accuſative* (*if it had been made by* habeo) *muſt be the Nominative*, e. g.

1. The *Smith hath a black face*, but his gain recompenceth his dirtineſs; he hath white Money. Men are willing to any labours, which produce profit; he that will give men Money, may perſuade them to all undertakings.

2. Thoſe men that have moſt Money, obtain the greateſt Reverence amongſt men; Virtue is moſt worthy of Honour; but Riches are preferred before Honeſty. Few underſtand the excellency of Virtue; but wiſe men eſteem him whoſe mind is adorned with the beſt Wiſdom, more than him whoſe Store-houſes are full of all ſorts of Treaſures.

Note, Suppetit *hath the very ſame conſtruction, and is uſed likewiſe for* habeo.

Reg. 13. Sum cum multis aliis, &c.

Rule 13. Sum, do, duco, verto, tribuo, habeor, *may have after them two Dative Cases, one of which is of that Noun which should be the Nominative or Accusative to follow the Verb, the other of a Noun which hath* to *or* for *before it*; e. g.

1. A faithful Subject *is a defence to the Prince*, he resisteth him not, but preferreth his Prince's safety before his own life; he obeyeth his Commands.

2. A broad Trench is a security *to* the Army; but neither Valour nor Walls are able *to* preserve those, whose lives have come to their appointed measure.

3. Pleasure is *accounted an happiness to him*, whose mind unworthy things satisfy; but the Soul of the wise is not content with earthly things.

Verbs govern an Accusative Case.

Reg. 1. VErba transitiva, &c.

Rule 1. *Verbs transitive, (and such are all those by which the Question* whom? *or* what? *may be asked, whether Active, Deponent, or Common, require the word answering to the Question* whom *or* what, *to be of the Accusative Case*; e. g.

1. *Shake off sloth*, which is the worst Enemy to Boys and Men; leave off Vanity and Play, which only please the Fancy, they profit not the mind; apply thy self to thy Studies, which will give thee a Crown of Honour; let not idle Boys example hinder thy diligence; obey thy Master, and thou shalt be free from fear.

2. Speak few words; it is not meet for Boys to talk; silence becometh Youth; hearken to all things which the Master speaketh; remember his words, and forget not his Admonitions, which are profitable for thee.

Rule 2. Quinetiam Verba Quamlibet, &c.

Rule 2. *Verbs Neuter may have an Accusative Case after them, when the Substantive, which cometh after them, is of a like signification with the Verb*; e. g.

1. He that serveth the Devil, *serveth an hard service*; the pleasures of Sin are full of bitterness; but he that pleaseth

leaſeth God, is his own Friend; the Service of God is e moſt perfect liberty.

2. Scholars live a wearifom life, (as they think) but leneſs is the cauſe, why Study is irkſom to them; the ths of Learning are ſmooth, but ſlothful Drones think m rough and unpaſſable.

Reg. 3. Sunt quæ figurate, &c.

Rule 3. *Verbs betokening an Exerciſe of ſome Senſe, as* oleo, ro, ſono, *govern an Accuſative Caſe after them, though y be Neuters, and never any other Caſe.*

1. The Drunkard ſmelleth of Wine, the proud man elleth of Perfumes.

2. The angry man breatheth Revenge againſt his Ene-ies; he thirſteth after the deſtruction of thoſe that op-ſe him, and injure him.

Reg. 4. Verba rogandi, docendi, &c.

Rule 4. *Verbs of* entreating, teaching, admoniſhing, *and* duo, *and* celo, *require two Accuſative Caſes after them, of a perſon, another of a thing.*

1. *Ask pardon of God,* who forgiveth penitent Sinners; re is no one that ſinneth not, the beſt of men ſin fre-ently, and have need of pardon.

2. A Saint relying upon the Merits of Chriſt, is a thou-nd times more happy than the man whoſe mind is full vain hopes, while he truſteth to his own Righteouſneſs; hriſt teacheth Chriſtians Faith, beſides Obedience.

3. He that *concealeth his Faults from men*, and putteth er his Crimes a covering of Lies, diſpleaſeth God, and ldeth a greater Fault to his other Impieties.

Rogandi Verba, &c.

After Verbs of asking, *the Accuſative Caſe of the perſon ay be turned into an Ablative, with* a *or* ab.

1. Ask not a kindneſs *of thine Enemy*, leſt he injure ee, when thou expecteſt benefit; he is a Fool that truſt-h his Enemy, though he ſmile upon him; the Gifts of nemies are deceitful; it is a dangerous thing to truſt ery Friend.

2. A Beggar beggeth a Farthing of a covetous man,

but

but he hath greater need than the poorer Servant; he not content with his present abundance, but is greedy ter Riches; the largest Treasures, which satisfy not desire, do not keep off poverty; he is poor that covets more; he that is covetous, is poorer than a Beggar.

Rule 5. *Those Verbs Passive will have an Accusative C after them, whose Actives will have two Accusatives.*

Thou shalt *be taught better manners*, for thou art of sau behaviour, which will not be concealed from the Mast who will be very angry with thee.

Verbs governing an Ablative Case.

Reg. 1. QUodvis Verbum admittit Ablativum, &c.

Rule 1. *All manner of Verbs require t Ablative Case of a Noun following them, which betokens t instrument wherewith a thing is to be done, without a Prepositi which Noun hath commonly the sign* with *or* by *before it in English.*

1. He that *correcteth* a Child *with the Rod*, doth hi good; but he that spareth him always, is guilty of all t Crimes which the foolish Youth committed afterward They are Enemies to Children, that suffer them to do e unpunished; It is a more desirable thing to recal Childr to obedience by severity, than to let loose the reins up their necks.

2. Learning is attained by study, not by sloth a sleep, which blunt the edge of the wit; intermission hel eth the mind, but idleness hurteth it; he that studie with his utmost endeavour, cometh to wisdom.

Note, *If to the English Particle* [with] *together may joined with safety to the sense, then* [with] *signifies com ny, and must be rendred in Latin by* [cum], *with an Ab tive Case after it.*

2. He that walketh friendly *with his friend*, and suddenly stabs him with a Dagger, is like the *Syre* which with their sweet Musick allure men to destructi

4. With flattering words a wicked woman inticeth silly Youth, who relying upon hopes of pleasure, go

with her, but at length his Fleſh and his Liver are conſumed with an hidden fire; he periſheth together with her whom he loved, and ſhall after this Life be tormented with her with moſt ſharp Tortures; the juſt Rewards of his forbidden Actions.

Rule 2. *Verbs require after them an Ablative Caſe, of the Noun which betokens the cauſe, or reaſon, or motive, which hath* at *or* for *before it.*

1. The Maſter that *beateth* a Boy his Scholar, *for the ſake* of his own Son, before he hath examined the matter, is unjuſt; whilſt he waxeth pale with rage againſt him whom he puniſheth, he becometh guilty of raſhneſs: A prudent Maſter heareth before that he judgeth; he is impartial.

2. The man that is contemptible for the ſhape of his Body, is oftentimes honourable for the endowments of his Mind.

3. A man of true valour is not moved at the report of War, he undertaketh it upon juſt occaſions, and preferreth his honour before his life.

Rule 5. *Verbs have after them an Ablative Caſe of the Noun Subſtantive, which betokens the manner* how, *and hath the ſign* with *before it.*

1. A ſmall ſpark raiſeth a great fire *with* ſtrange increaſe; it pierceth between the parts of Matter with wonderful ſubtilty.

2. The Doctrine of the Goſpel, after the Death of Chriſt, the Author of it, overſpread the World with wonderful ſpeed; conquer'd the hearts of men with invincible force; with great ſucceſs it oppoſed the Heatheniſh Idols. The Devils were angry at the overthrow of their Kingdom; but their lying Oracles yielded to the power of God, who began to fulfil to Chriſt the promiſe which he had given him; and now Paganiſm is almoſt extinguiſhed.

Ablativo cauſæ & modo, &c.

Sometimes the Noun betokening the cauſe, is put into the Ablative Caſe with præ.

He

He that languisheth *for thirst*, giveth a man greater thanks, that offereth him water, than if a Prince gave him a Crown; those things are most acceptable, which answer the present necessity.

Rule 4. *After any Verbs, the Ablative Case is to be used of a Noun, which betokens the Original, Descent, Country or part affected, either Body or Mind.*

1. A Boy of an ingenuous temper *is troubled in mind* when he hath provoked his Parents to anger, and desires nothing more than the recovering of their favour; but a Boy accustomed to the practice of disobedience, laugheth at reproof.

2. That Child is happy, *that by descent* proceedeth from good and pious Parents; but he is more happy, that also imitateth the good Examples of his Ancestors.

Reg. 5. Quibuslibet Verba subjiciuntur, &c.

Rule 5. *The English words*, buy, sell, cost, *is* worth, *and such like, when they are rendred into Latin by their proper Verbs, require the Substantive betokening the* price, rate, *or* value, *to be put into the Ablative Case, and after Verbs of* buying, *the person of whom must be the Ablative Case, with* a *or* ab *after* sell *and* cost, *the Dative.*

1. Is not he an excellent Merchant, that *buyeth* Wares *for an hundred pound*, and *selleth* them *for an hundred pence?* He is not a friend to himself.

2. This Book *is worth Five groats*, but the Bookseller sold it me *for Thirteenpence*, and told me that it *cost him Twelvepence.*

Vili, paulo, minimo, magno, &c.

Note 1. Vili, paulo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo, *are Adjectives of price or value, and are used after such Verbs, without Substantives.*

1. He sells his Eternal Happiness *for a very little*, that prefers Dunghil Pleasures before it; Heaven is worth the whole World, it will cost a man labour and denial of himself; Pleasures worldly and heavenly, seldom succeed each other.

2. Men desire to buy Glory *cheap*, which cost our Saviour

viour *dear*, who purchaſed it for us; they value the World *at too great a rate.*

Reg. 7. Excipiuntur hi Genitivi, tanti, quanti, &c.

Rule 7. *Theſe Engliſh Words*, viz. So much, how much, thus much, more, leſs, as much as, how much ſoever, *muſt be rendred by Adjectives*, (tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, &c.) *without Subſtantives in the Genitive Caſe; but if the Engliſh be ſuch, that with them a Subſtantive muſt be joined, the Ablative muſt be uſed according to Rule.*

1. A good name is a Jewel, which is *worth ſo much*, that at what rate ſoever thou purchaſeſt it, thou doſt not buy it dear.

2. A man given to Vice, contracteth to himſelf many Diſeaſes, the cure coſts him more than his pleaſure recompenceth; health is eaſily loſt, but the recovery of it is bought *of Phyſicians at a great rate.*

Note, Valeo, (*to be worth*) *is ſometimes read with an Accuſative.*

Reg. 6. Verba abundandi, implendi, &c.

Rule 6. *Verbs of* filling, emptying, wanting, abounding, loading, eaſing, *require the Noun following* (*which hath* with *or* of *before it*) *to be put into the Ablative Caſe, beſides an Accuſative of the thing or perſon* filled, emptied, *&c.*

1. He that *wanteth money*, is accounted a fool, though he be wiſe; he is reviled by the Tongues of thoſe that tread upon all, that are not like them, with great pride; an Aſs *laden* with Gold, is preferred before the moſt uſeful Beaſts.

2. He that eaſeth the miſerable of their burthen, ſhall hear many bleſſing him; we may admire ſome mens cruelty, that never pity others, never do them good; ſuch men are of ſordid minds, and when they want help, none will ſuccour them; fill the poor with food, and thou ſhalt never want treaſure; God telleth us, That if we give to the poor, we lend to him, and hath promiſed us, that he will repay us.

3. A Thief robbeth a Traveller of his Money, but at length he depriveth himſelf of life, for his villany bringeth him to ruin and death.

Note 1. Participo (*Adjective, to make partaker*) *hath the same construction*, viz. *an Accusative of the person, and an Ablative of the thing.*

Note 2. *Verbs of* filling *and* emptying, *are sometimes found to have a Genitive Case after them, of the Substantive which hath* of *or* with *before it.*

Reg. 7. Fungor, fruor, utor, & similia, &c.

Rule 7. Fungor, fruor, utor, nitor, lætor, vescor, glorior, supersedeo, *require an Ablative Case after them of the thing*, muto *an Ablative of the Noun which hath* [into] *before it, and besides that an Accusative*; Dignor, communico, *and* prosequor *an Accusative of the person, and Ablative of the thing.*

1. That Boy, that often seeketh *to enjoy the company* of evil Boys, never *performeth his duty*; he preferreth the love of a tempting Boy before his Master's favour; he quickly layeth aside his care, *leaveth off* his diligence, changeth smiles of his Master *into* frowns; he becometh like his Companion, who will rejoice at his ruin. Idleness is the nourisher of all Vices, and Vice for the most part forgoeth destruction. Be thou therefore mindful of thy duty.

2. Use thy Friend with greatest caution; trust him not before thou know him well; there is not one among twenty Friends that is faithful; they seem loving, but they use flattery; a mask which hideth their hearts from other men. Friends destroy more than Enemies.

3. *Leave off childish Vanities*, when thou comest to ripeness of age; trifles are a dishonour to years; use not childish Exercises, nor let the delights of Children please thee after that the ripeness of thine understanding hath rendred thee fit for greater employment.

4. *Boast not of thy health and strength* too much; only whilst thou enjoyest them, give praise to him that bestoweth all good things upon all men; use them well, lest he deprive thee of them. God doth good to thee, return him not evil.

Reg. 8. Mereor cum Adverbiis bene, male, &c.

Rule

Rule 8. Of *after* Mereor *is made by the Preposition* de, *(which will have an Ablative Case after it,) if after the English word* deserve, *come an Adverb.*

A faithful School-master *deserveth well* of his Country, he teacheth his Scholars to obey their King, he educateth not Rebels; and though many become wicked and pernicious, that have had good Education, yet his honesty satisfieth his own mind; for he knoweth, that he taught them nothing, except that which tended to faithfulness to his Prince, and the publick Peace; he desireth that every one that he instructeth, may become a common good, and may *deserve* as well as may be of Mankind.

Note, *If no Adverb come after* mereor, *but some other word with* of, of *must be made by* à *or* ab.

Over-fond Parents many times destroy their Children; and though Reverence and Obedience is due to Parents, yet their foolish indulgence deserveth very ill of the Children, who afterwards feel its evil event, when it hath brought them to misery; *so that they deserve not at all thanks of them.*

Rule 9. Of *after a Verb, must be made by the Ablative Case always, except the Verb belong to that Rule,* viz. Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, &c. *and sometimes even after those must be rendred in Latin by* de, ex, a, *or* ab.

1. A wise Man scorneth not *to take advice of those,* than whom he is wiser by many degrees; for fools sometimes speak wisely; he obeyeth not all Counsellors, but he heareth all things patiently, and practiseth that which he thinketh most profitable to his business.

2. A good man learneth good *of* all men; *of* the wicked he learneth the odiousness *of* sin; for he observeth how greatly it deformeth them; he learneth to avoid the Vices which they practise, for he seeth the misery which Vice createth to them, and foreseeth the Eternal Sorrow which will succeed it; *of* good men he learneth Virtue, for he striveth to imitate them; he endeavoureth to be like those that learn of Christ, who always pleased his heavenly Father.

Note, Of *is sometimes the same with* concerning, *and must then be rendred only by* de.

A wise man heareth many things *of other men*, but he believeth not report, which is a lyar; he thinketh worst *of* himself, best *of* his Neighbour.

2. He that heareth of a great Treasure, soon striveth to obtain it; but when the Ambassadors *of* God speak *of* Eternal Riches, men regard not the message, as if they were worth nothing.

Note, Of *between two Noun Substantives is sometimes the same with* concerning, *and must not be rendred by the Genitive Case of the Noun, but by* de.

Among Children sometimes we see the hottest contention about the smallest trifles; and among Fools we find many times a long discourse *of* the most ridiculous matters; a long talk *of* nothing is acceptable to a silly mind, but for the most part a wise man's words are *of* weighty Affairs.

Reg. 10. Verbis quæ vim comparationis obtinent, &c.

Rule 10. *Verbs of comparing and exceeding, require after them an Ablative Case of the Noun, which signifieth the measure*, by how much, *or the thing* wherein, *e. g.*

1. Labour is *many degrees* wholsomer than sloth, the one enfeebleth the strength of the Body, and the perception of the mind; the other is wholsom both for mind and body.

2. He is honestly ambitious that laboureth *to excel* all his Equals *in wisdom* and virtue; no other contention is good.

Reg. 11. Quibuslibet verbis additur Ablativus, &c.

Rule 11. *A Noun or Pronoun Substantive, joined with a Participle (or with another Substantive, before which* being *is expressed or understood) and having none other word, whereof it can be governed, shall be put in the Ablative Case absolute*, i. e. *not depending upon any word but it self.*

1. *Death approaching* the Soul which never before believed God's Word, concerning Eternity, sees future things with greatest clearness, and Conscience accusing,

the

the man condemns himſelf, and (commonly too late) blameth his own folly; then he ſees the Hell that God threatned him with, and which he ſhall quickly feel.

2. *God being Teacher*, men ſhall learn; for nothing can reſiſt the Divine Power, which effecteth whatſoever it deſigneth. They are happy that learn of ſo wiſe an Inſtructor.

Note, *When you have the Engliſh of any of theſe words*, viz. Dum, quum, quandò, ſi, quanquam, *the Subſtantive next following, which ſeems to be the Nominative Caſe to a Verb, may more elegantly be put in the Ablative Caſe, and the Participle uſed to agree with it, inſtead of the Verb:*

1. *When God puniſheth*, the World trembleth, and wicked men are ſometimes taught the fear of God by his Voice from Heaven; but ſome men are of ſo obſtinate minds, that nothing can move them; *though God beſtow* all mercies on them, goodneſs doth not perſuade them, and though they feel his anger, they will not obey him. The hardeſt Rock is ſofter than the Hearts of men.

2. When God calleth, men anſwer him not, and therefore he threatneth them with a refuſal when they cry unto him; but he filleth with bleſſings thoſe that ask his mercy with all their hearts unfeignedly.

Reg. 12. Paſſivis additur, &c.

Rule 12. *Verbs Paſſive have after them an Ablative Caſe of the Noun which betokens the doer;*) *with* a *or* ab, *which Prepoſitions anſwer to the Engliſh ſigns* of *or* by.

1. *He is beloved of all*, that is *of* courteous behaviour; but he is more hateful than the Peſtilence, that when he ſpeaketh ſmooth words, thinketh evil, whoſe Heart diſagreeth with his Tongue.

2. The Hearts *of* men are full of deceit; the moſt wiſe man knows not himſelf ſufficiently; the thoughts of men are throughly known only *by* God, who made the Heart, and ſeeth all its Secrets; and will call men to judgment; the moſt hidden things ſhall hereafter be laid open *by* him that ſeeth all things.

Exc. Quorum Participia frequentius, &c.

The Participles of Verbs Passive require after them rather a Dative of the doer, than an Ablative, e. g.

The News of his own Son's death *being heard by the Philosopher*, when his sudden lamentation was expected by his Friends, he only said, I knew that I begat him mortal; he did not become pale or languid with sorrow; he did not faint in his mind; he was not presently sick of grief; he seemed a Man of an unshaken mind.

As for the other words after a Passive, (sc. *all beside such as betoken a doer or sufferer*) *they must be the same Case, which the Verb Active requires.*

Rule 13. Vapulo, veneo, liceo, exulo, fio, *are called Neuter Passives, and have the same Case after them that Passives have*; sc. *an Ablative of the doer or sufferer with* à *or* ab.

1. *Cicero* the famous *Roman* Orator, a Man of greatest Eloquence, was banished by *Clodius*; but the Image and Memory of his excellent Virtues remained among the Citizens, who valued so great a Man at a great rate; he was recalled from his Exile, he was called the Father of his Country, which Title properly belongeth only to Kings. His Works are prized by all Learned Men highly.

2. The Boy is deservedly beaten by his Master, that whilst he readeth many Authors, of whom he may learn Eloquence, Elegancy, and moral Precepts, which conduce to his profit, beside the meer *Latin* words; yet only readeth, and remembreth nothing.

Of the Construction of the English Infinitive Mood.

Reg. 1 QUibusdam tum Verbis tum Adjectivis, &c. *The English Infinitive Mood hath next before it the sign* to; *or such English Verbs as have the sign* to *before them, must be rendred into Latin by the Infinitive Mood*, e. g.

1. He that desireth to learn, and to be wise, is not content with one reading, he readeth over again. Some have need of many readings, whose Memories are not tenacious of Instructions; the Memories of some Boys are like

like the Water, which retaineth not an impreſſion; Children of leſs Wit conquer a difficulty by frequency, which the haſty labour and induſtry of greater Wits cannot conquer. Uſe patience, thereby thou ſhalt attain to whatſoever thou deſireſt to underſtand.

2. The Boy that never doubteth, learneth nothing; he is raſh, and ignorant how much labour exact Learning will coſt a Boy: he forgetteth conſideration, which is moſt neceſſary for all that learn; he thinketh himſelf wiſe, therefore he is juſtly thought a Fool by all others: He that goeth moſt ſlowly, is wiſer than his Companion, who runneth headlong. Drones are not worthy of commendation, but the over-haſty are worſe than they; extreams are dangerous in all things. Go the middle way, if thou deſireſt *to* attain thine end.

Rule 2. *When two Verbs come together without a Nominative Caſe between them, though the latter have not the ſign* to *before it, it is the Engliſh Infinitive Mood, and muſt be put in the Infinitive Mood Latin.*

1. A godly Son dares not diſobey his Parents; though they be fond of him, he abuſeth not their love; they indulge him, yet he pleaſeth them; for if he reſiſt his Parents Will, he diſpleaſeth God; he will not hearken *to* the evil counſel of wicked Boys, that are void of the fear of God; he had rather be deſpiſed, and loſe their company, becauſe of his honeſty. The love of the Wicked is more dangerous than their hatred.

2. Who can compare any other Creature with Learning? It excelleth Riches and Honours; for all Subſtance being taken away, Learning abideth inviolable; violence cannot ſpoil a man of it; it continueth untouched in the midſt of all loſſes.

Rule 3. *When two Verbs come together in Engliſh, with nothing but a Nominative Caſe between them, that Nominative Caſe may be turned into the Accuſative, and the Verb which ſeemeth to be the Indicative Mood, be made by the Latin Infinitive.*

1. When *Alexander the Great* called to mind, himſelf had killed his deareſt Friend, he intended to have ſtabbed himſelf; but ſome of his Soldiers knew he intended evil to himſelf, and hindred him. Self-murther had not well revenged Man-ſlaughter; the death of ſo great an Emperor had not repaired, but had doubled the loſs.

2. *Titus Veſpaſian*, the Eleventh *Roman Cæſar*, after that he had conquered and taken *Jeruſalem*, when he entred into the City and the Temple, lamented the divided Inhabitants had deſtroyed ſo glorious a City by their cruelty and obſtinacy; he the Conqueror pitied the conquered; he bewailed their folly; he was called, *The delight of Mankind*; no Prince was ever of a ſweeter temper.

3. Hiſtorians ſay, *Ariſtides* left not (when he died) Money ſufficient for the Charges of his Funeral; they tell us, the publick Treaſure ſupplied the greater part.

But if, for the Conjunction underſtood, quòd *be expreſt in the Latin, the Nominative Caſe, and the Indicative or Subſtantive Mood muſt remain (as they ſeem in the Engliſh) to come after* quòd.

N. B. 2. *When the Conjunction* that *is expreſſed in the Engliſh, and it ſeems as if* quòd *muſt be made for it in Latin,* quòd *may more elegantly be left out, and the word which ſeems to be the* Nominative Caſe *tranſlated by the* Accuſative, *and the Verb by the Infinitive Mood*, e. g.

1. He *that* believeth the report *that* he heareth from a Lyar, is a fool; a wiſe man never truſteth him *that* once deceived him; he that is deceived once by a Knave, blameth the Deceiver's deceit; but he that is twice cheated by the ſame man, betrayeth the greateſt imprudence: He that knows that his Companion is deceitful, and yet truſts him, tells all the World that himſelf hath loſt his Reaſon.

2. That is a Boy of a generous Spirit, *that* when he heard *that* his Maſter praiſed him, uſed his utmoſt diligence *that* he might not ſeem unworthy of the praiſe which his Maſter gave him; *that* is perſuaded by Arguments more ſtrongly than by Stripes.

3. When

3. When a wiſe man heareth *that* himſelf is blamed, he enquireth who blameth him; if he underſtand *that* good men accuſe him, he accuſeth himſelf by their Teſtimony, and ceaſeth to commit thoſe things which ſeem evil to others; if he hear that wicked men blame him, if for a juſt Cauſe, he bewareth for the future; but if they accuſe him becauſe his exact Virtue diſpleaſeth them, he rejoyceth in their Accuſation.

Reg. 4. Prius ſupinum Activè, &c.

Rule 4. *The Engliſh of the Infinitive Mood Active, after another Verb betokening motion, as* going, coming, *&c. muſt not be made by the Latin Infinitive, but by the firſt Supine of the Latin Verb*, e. g.

1. A man that ſpendeth many years, and layeth out all his time upon trifles, is like a Merchant that *went* a long Voyage to fetch Aſhes from Mount *Ætna*, which being expoſed to the Winds, he loſt them all in his *return*.

2. *Ovid* ſaith, The younger Women *go* to the *Theatre* to ſee the young Men, to ſhew their gay Clothes, to procure themſelves Wooers; they *go* only to ſee and to hear.

3. Boys *go* to the Church to hear Sermons, but they do not attend to the Preacher; they hear of ſerious things, but their minds are buſied about vanity; they forget the pious Inſtructions; they are unmindful of their own advantage; they ſit talking of play, and of things which do not belong to their welfare; they *go* away void of all Piety: They are moſt worthy of puniſhment that abuſe Sabbaths. Boys are ſent to Church to get increaſe of ſpiritual Knowledge.

Rule 5. *The Engliſh of the Infinitive Mood Paſſive* [to be] *coming next after a Verb betokening motion, muſt not be rendred by the Latin Infinitive, but by the Subſtantive with the Conjunction* [ut]

1. Boys come to ſchool to be inſtructed, but they are enemies to themſelves, they do not uſe their time rightly; the Maſter endeavours to teach them, but they do not anſwer his care; they are a grief to the Maſter, who pitieth their ignorance.

2. He that is worſe than his Anceſtors, and more ignoble, is of a baſe Spirit: But whoſoever endeavoureth to advance the honour of his Family by greater virtue, is truly worthy of a great Name among men. He that haſteth to be honoured deſervedly, is wiſe: But he that runneth with all ſpeed in the paths of Vice, haſteneth to deſtroy himſelf and his honour, and is deſervedly called a Fool.

Rule 6. *The Engliſh of the Infinitive Mood Active, coming after the Engliſh of any Tenſe of the Verb* [Sum] *muſt not be rendred by the Latin Infinitive, but by a Participle of the Future in* [rus.]

1. When thou art to chuſe Companions for thy ſelf, find out thoſe that are better and wiſer than thy ſelf, of whom thou mayſt learn ſomething; he that learneth of all whom he converſeth with, is like a Bee, that, when it is to perform its wonted task, gathereth Honey everywhere; but he that chuſeth only uſeful Companions, is like the *Ermin*, which, when it is to move from its former place, treadeth only in the cleaneſt paths.

2. Converſe with thoſe that are more honourable than thy ſelf, ſo ſhalt thou be honour'd of all that obſerve thy choice; but avoid thoſe that are too much greater than thy ſelf; they will be Lords, not Friends; they will ſcorn thee when thou art to undergo misfortunes.

Rule 7. *The Engliſh of the Infinitive Mood Paſſive, after any Tenſe of* [Sum] *muſt be rendred by the Participle of the Future in* [dus]; *never by the Infinitive Latin.*

1. The goodneſs of God is to be praiſed, who beſtoweth even upon his Enemies innumerable kindneſſes, who giveth rain and other neceſſaries to thoſe that ſerve him not. It becometh us to imitate his bleſſed Example; let us do good to our Enemies: That Piety is to be admir'd, which is extended to ſo great a degree.

2. He is to be blam'd that is over-prodigal; they are to be deſpis'd that are covetous: With-hold not thy Money when there is need of it, nor waſte it when there is no need. Riches are Treaſures lent to Men by

God

God, which they must use as he pleaseth; they are not to be laid out without his leave, nor to be detained when he demandeth them.

Rule 8. *The English of the Infinitive Mood signifying to the end for, or that he might, is made by the Gerund in* [dum] *or the Subjunctive Mood with* [ut,] *or with a Relative.*

1. The Prince that hireth Soldiers to fight his Battles, buyeth Enemies to destroy himself; they that for desire of reward will revenge any Quarrel, are dangerous to those to whom they seem Friends, and whose Cause they defend; for more Money will buy their Force against their former Masters; the richer Prince shall always have their help; they serve Money, not the Prince.

2. He that buyeth Books only to lay up in his Closet, who never readeth them, is like a man that is desirous of fine Clothes, but layeth them up in his Chest, and doth not put them on.

3. He that only lives to gratify his sensitive Appetite, is not a Man, but a Beast; he lives a Bestial life; he is the most base of all Slaves, that serves himself; that Man is to be honoured, that prefers his noblest Reason before his Senses.

Reg. 9. Gerundia in di pendent à quibusdam, &c.

9. *When the English of the Infinitive Mood Active comes next after any of these Substantives,* viz. studium, causa, tempus, gratia, spes, opportunitas, modus, ratio, potestas, licentia, consuetudo, consilium, vis, norma, amor, cupido, locus; *or after an Adjective which would govern a Genitive Case of a Noun, such English Infinite Mood must be rendred by the Latin Gerund in* [di].

1. Foolish Sinners neglect Exhortation, till time is past; and when their wishes are vain, Death approaching, they then desire opportunity to amend their lives; when they have abused Divine Patience, they afterwards beg space to return. Late Repentance is seldom true.

2. He:

2. He that hath ſtedfaſt hope to live for ever, is not angry with Divine Providence when it bids him go hence; he is ſure to ſee God; And what Earthly Felicity is to be compared with that Viſion?

3. A deſire to dye is culpable, when it proceeds only from impatience by reaſon of trouble. But he that is deſirous to live, when Death would be more honourable to God and Religion, wanteth Chriſtian Courage, is of a feeble mind.

4. He that is greedy to heap up Riches to himſelf, nor careth by what arts or means he obtaineth them, layeth up for himſelf Repentance. Unjuſt gain pleaſeth the Covetous, but diſpleaſeth God; and the remembrance of it will become bitterneſs at laſt.

5. The Devil uſeth many Stratagems; he hath many ways to deceive; he is skilful to deſtroy; time and experience have increaſed his Cunning; but he flieth from thoſe that reſolvedly reſiſt him, the ſtrength of God aſſiſting.

Reg 10. Poſterius Supinum paſſivè, &c.

Rule 10. *The Engliſh Infinitive Mood Paſſive, coming after a Noun Adjective, muſt be rendred by the latter Supine of the Verb Active.*

1. A man is hard to be found that preferreth the advantage of his Friend before his own; that not only pitieth his Friend's Calamities, but alſo helpeth him with all his might. Adverſity is the fitteſt time to try the ſincerity of Friendſhip. The Bonds of Friendſhip are to be obſerved as ſacred.

2. Parents are worthy to be reproved, that indulge their Children too much. He that careth not for his Family, is worſe than a Heathen, he is worſe than a Brute. But thoſe Parents that give Children leave to live and act according to their own Will, are unfaithful to them.

3. The Condition of Parents is to be bewailed, that are deprived of their Children; but the hard lot of Children is more worthy to be lamented, that are deſtitute

of

of Parents, for they are expoſed to unknown Events.

4. A Child that feareth God, is afraid to ſpeak thoſe things which others act; he is afraid to repeat words which other Boys ſpoke. His pious Parents tell him, That all Wickedneſs is not only ſinful to be committed, but is alſo ſometimes dangerous, always unhandſome to be expreſs'd. But Children too often ſpeak of the evil words and works of their Companions with delight, at beſt without hatred.

N. B. *The Engliſh Infinitive Mood after* Adjectives *may elegantly be alſo rendred by the* Subjunctive *Mood of the Verb, with the* Relative [qui] *For Exerciſe of which Boys may be be accuſtomed to render that Clauſe of the former Example, wherein the force of the Rule lies, both ways in the ſame Exerciſe,* viz. *both by the latter Supine, and by the Subjunctive.*

Reg. 11. *The Engliſh Infinitive Mood active after any Tenſe of* [Sum,] *when the Infinitive Mood noteth* property, duty, *or* place, *muſt be rendred by the Latin Infinitive as it ſeemeth to be; but the word that ſeemeth to be the Nominative Caſe to* [Sum,] *muſt then be turned into the Genitive, governed of* [Sum,] *or it may be rendred by* oportet, &c.

1. The Maſter is to take care that the Scholar neglect not his Study, while he is in School; but Parents are to look to it, that Children obey them, when they are diſmis'd from School. It is not meet to trouble the Maſter with Domeſtick Faults.

2. Children and Men are to avoid raſh ſpeaking. All muſt uſe conſideration. He that ſpeaketh without care, often remembreth ſome words which fill him with ſorrow afterwards. An haſty Tongue is full of Folly and Vanity, and moſt frequently guilty of Lies. Thoſe that expect peace and ſafety, are to reſtrain their Tongues with a Bridle.

Reg. 12. *The Engliſh Infinitive Mood Active, coming after Adjectives, betokening* worthineſs, fitneſs, *or ſomething like to them, muſt be rendred in Latin by the Subjunctive Mood, with the Relative* [qui.]

1. He

1. He is unworthy to live, that liveth only for himſelf. A wiſe man is a common good, who conſulteth for the benefit of others, who endeavours to do good to all. But yet he is not to be commended, that as a Buſy-body, ſearcheth out thoſe things which do not belong to him. The middle way is moſt ſafe. He is truly wiſe, that neither neglecteth his Duty towards his Neighbour, nor medleth with other mens private Affairs. Thoſe men are unfit to have the name of Friends, that ſearch out the Conditions of other men, not that they may help them, but that they may know and divulge them.

2. He is unfit to enjoy Riches, who doth not uſe them. God giveth men Riches, that they may ſerve him with them; but they abuſe the greateſt plenty. Their unſatiable deſires provoke them to unjuſt methods to increaſe their Subſtance. He is more happy, that (whilſt Poverty leſſeneth his Power to do good) ſtriveth to ſerve God with his utmoſt ability; than him, that whilſt he hath opportunity to do much good, doth nothing; he is worthy to loſe that, which he uſeth not.

Reg. 13. *When the Engliſh Infinitive Mood Active cometh after a Noun Adjective, which Adjective governs an Accuſative Caſe, with the Propoſition* ad, *ſuch Infinitive Mood muſt be rendred in Latin, by the Gerund in* dum, *with* ad.

1. Reveal not thy Miſeries to any, except to thoſe that can help thee. Many are ready to ask, How doſt thou do? that are not forward to help on thy welfare. Believe not all that ſay they pity thee. Truſt a true Friend (if thou be ſure to find ſuch a one) that will pity thee, and will be forward to uſe his greateſt endeavours to free thee of thy trouble.

2. Adviſe thy Friend moſt warily, leſt thou injure him, and he accuſe thee of Enmity. Raſh Counſel is unprofitable to him that giveth, and to him that receiveth it. Be ready to hear, careful to contrive, but ſlow to ſpeak.

3. It is hard to move him that is accuſtomed to do evil. Cuſtom is equal to Nature for ſtrength and perſwaſion.

ſwaſion. Admonitions, Inſtructions, Threatnings, Promiſes, Fears, are ineffectual, to baniſh Vice from a mind, in which it hath a long time dwelt.

4. It is ſtrange to be obſerved, how earneſtly Boys endeavour to cheat themſelves, whilſt they think they only cheat their Maſter. They are ſent to School to get Learning, but they invent Arts to eſcape ſaying their Leſſons, whereby they continue Blockheads, and never come to Learning. They go to School to be inſtructed, but they are glad if the Maſter forget to call them, though he very ſeldom pleaſe them ſo. When they are to give an account of their Authors, they have Brains ready to invent little Tricks to ſupply their neglect; whereby they ſtrive to impoſe upon the Maſter, who yet is faithful, and findeth out their craft. When they have committed a fault, and are to be puniſhed, they endeavour to excuſe themſelves with Lies, or to appeaſe the Maſter's anger by Promiſes, which they never perform. Parents buy them Books to read in, and they are capable to underſtand them, but they read idle Trifles when they ſhould ſtudy. They deſire nothing more than to ſtay away from School; they ſhun their own benefit, and covet their own loſs; but when they come to Man's eſtate, they ſee they were their own Enemies.

The Conſtruction of the Participle.

Reg. 1. PArticipia regunt caſus verborum, &c.

Latin Participles govern ſuch Caſes as the Verbs of which they come; except Participles in dus, *which govern a Dative Caſe after them, though the Verbs which they come of govern an Ablative.*

1. Virtue to be preferr'd before the pureſt Gold, is valued at a low rate; and virtuous men are deſpiſed of many; but they enjoy inward Peace and Tranquility. Pity the greateſt Men, who are loaden with Wealth, and yet are miſerable, becauſe they want the chief happineſs of Man.

2. How

2. How many men are like the Brutiſh Swine, that prefer Dirt and Mire before the cleaneſt Palace? They deſpiſe Jewels, and gather up Pebbles; they are content with ſordid Earth, deſpiſing Heavenly things, wanting wiſdom to diſtinguiſh.

Exc. 1. Participiorum voces cum ſunt, &c.

When the Engliſh of a Participle may form all the degrees of Compariſon, the Latin Participle then becomes of the nature of a Noun Adjective, and requires the Subſtantive following it, to be put in the Genitive Caſe, whatſoever Caſe the Verb governed.

1. That Maſter is moſt loving to his Scholars, that will not ſuffer them to loiter, nor will give them too much time to play, that reſtrained them from evil by the ſevereſt Laws; that giveth them rewards when they are worthy of them; but yet puniſheth their wilful Idleneſs, when nothing elſe will amend them.

2. A Friend, that reproveth of Errors, is preferred before him that flattereth with his Lips; the wounds of a Friend are more healing to a man, than the ſmooth words of a flattering Enemy.

Exc. Exoſus, peroſus, pertæſus, &c.

2. [Pertæſus] *weary, a Participle requires an Accuſative Caſe after it. So alſo* [exoſus] *and* [peroſus,] *when they ſignify* hating, *but when they ſignify* hated by, *or* hateful to, *they require a Dative Caſe.*

1. Judges *hating* Bribes and Covetouſneſs, are *hated* by thoſe, whoſe guilt prompts them to avoid the ſtroke of Juſtice; but they are choſen by wiſe Princes. For unſpotted Juſtice is the *beſt* Friend to Royal Power.

2. He is *hated* of all, *hateful* to God and Men, that uſeth a double Tongue; he is certainly a Diſſembler, whoſe words are changed according to occaſion; he is a Friend to no body; he always diſpraiſeth thoſe whom he ſeems to admire; he ſpeaketh good to all, whiſpereth evil of all, his Mouth diſagreeth with his Heart. All men become weary of his Company; thoſe that ſometimes thought him a Friend, ſoon begin to diſtruſt him, for he is void of common honeſty.

Exc. 1. Natus, prognatus, ſatus, &c.

Exc. 1. Natus, prognatus, ſatus, cretus, ortus, editus, creatus; *Participles of Verbs Paſſive, require an Ablative Caſe without a Prepoſition, whereas their Verbs require an Ablative with a Prepoſition.*

1. A Son born of honeſt Parents, is more worthy than him that ſprung from a wicked rich Man.

2. Man ſprung from the Duſt by his Creation, hath many times his mind faſtned to the Earth; nor doth he mount from thence, till Wiſdom inſtruct his choice.

3. A Man hating Vice, is more beautiful in the ſight of God, than him that is adorned with glittering Robes, but indulgeth Sin, which God hateth, who loveth Virtue ſprung from Heaven.

Reg. 2. Gerundia in do pendent, &c.

Rule 2. *The Engliſh Participle in* ing, *coming after a Prepoſition, Verb, or Adjective, which govern an Ablative Caſe, the word that ſeemeth to be the Participle, muſt be rendred by the Gerund in* do, *if after an Adjective or Verb, having* of, with, *or* by, *after them, without a Prepoſition; if after any other Engliſh, with it.*

N. B. *Gerunds govern the ſame Caſe with their Verbs.*

1. He that is quickly weary of tending to the Miniſter preaching, or tired with kneeling while the Maſter prayeth, is a lazy and wicked Boy; he loveth not the Worſhip of God, but hath his mind buſied about playing, while he ſeemeth to ſerve God.

2. Idle Boys endeavour to allure others from Studying, but the diligent hearken not to their Temptations; for no good is gotten by neglecting: It is better to diſpleaſe ilde Playfellows, than to pleaſe them; but every place is full of wicked Boys, who corrupt others, and exhort them to various Vices.

3. Boys learn by teaching others who are more ignorant than themſelves; by repeating over thoſe things which they have formerly learned, they faſten them more ſtedfaſtly in their Memories. They have need of all opportunities to call over paſt Inſtructions; for they are forward

ward to forget them, though they be Boys of good Wits, and competent Memories.

4. Boys many times learn Wisdom from observing the Punishment of others; but some refuse to be taught Diligence that way; their own Experience only reduceth them to Obedience. Boys imitate Men; some become wise at other Mens charge, others at their own. Experience is the best Mistress in all things; but in Sufferings altogether unwelcome.

5. But amongst Boys, as well as amongst Men, others are obstinate in offending; neither the experience of others will move them, nor their own; they wilfully sail in those Seas where they before scarcely escaped Destruction.

Reg. 3. Gerundia in dum pendent, &c.

Rule 3. *When the English of the Participle of the Present Tense, cometh after the English of any Preposition which governeth an Accusative Case, or after any Adjective which will have an Accusative after it, with* ad: *In such Case, the English Participle must be rendred in Latin by the Gerund in* dum, *with the proper Preposition set before it.*

1. At eating, Boys ought to sit still, not to talk. At saying Lesson, none ought to speak, but he that is appointed by the Master, whose leave is to be asked before the Scholars betake themselves to play.

2. The Boy that is chastised, because of truanting, hath no cause to accuse the Master of Severity; he ought to blame himself, and to resolve, God helping, that he will shake off Idleness for the future.

Note 1. *The English word* must *(which may be rendred by* [oportet] *and another Verb of the Imperative Mood) is also to be made into* Latin *by quite omitting any particular Latin for* must, *and only turning the Verb following* must, *into the Gerund in* [dum,] *(without a Preposition;) and setting the Verb* [est] *impersonally after the Gerund; and then the Noun foregoing, which seems to be the Nominative Case, must be the Dative.*

1. They

1. They *muſt* ſtrive with their utmoſt might, that deſire to become learned, and to conquer the difficulties which they will meet; all things that are excellent, are difficult to be attained.

2. The Soldier *muſt* fight valiantly, that beareth a mind enflamed with a deſire to conquer the Enemy; his Arm muſt procure him the Honour which his Heart wiſheth for. But ſometimes ſecret Stratagems and ſubtil Policy, defeat the moſt valiant Warriers. Deceit ſheddeth leſs Blood, and hath ſometimes more Succeſs.

Exc. *If* muſt *ſtand before a Verb irregular, or a Verb Paſſive, which have no Gerunds*; oportet, *with the Infinitive Mood after it, muſt be uſed, and the word that ſeemeth to be the Nominative Caſe, muſt be the Accuſative.*

1. Children muſt be obedient to their Parents: Children that grieve their Parents, purchaſe to themſelves a Curſe; they provoke God to deny to them that length of Life which he hath promiſed to the dutiful; or, if he ſuffer Rebels to live, he giveth them Children that ſhall revenge their Parents diſobedience.

2. Zeal is a Fire, whoſe Flame proceedth from the fire of Love; but it muſt be confined within the bounds of Truth. Nothing is more dangerous than blind and falſe Zeal.

3. In loving God, we muſt not neglect our Neighbour; the Obſervation of the Second Table of the Decalogue, muſt be joined with our care to keep the firſt. He keepeth no Commandment truly, that wilfully neglecteth one.

Reg. 4. Vertuntur Gerundii voces, &c.

2. *Sometimes the Engliſh Participle, which ſhould be rendred by the Gerund, according to the former Rules, is otherwiſe Latined, by turning the word that ſhould be the Gerund into a Gerundive Adjective in* dus; *and then that Adjective muſt agree with the Subſtantive next following*, which may be practiſed in this following Example, *viz.*

A deſire to excel all others in Virtue, and in good Letters, is a commendable Ambition; and a delight in obtaining

obtaining praiſe, is worthy of Encouragements, becauſe it is a ſign of an excellent Mind; but he is a wicked Boy, that applieth his Thoughts only to out-going the worſt in Villany. Such a contention is Diabolical.

Rule 4. *The Engliſh Participle in* ing, *muſt ſometimes be Latined neither by the Participle nor Gerund, but by a Noun Subſtantive; which is when it hath* a, an, *or* the *before it, and* of *after it, or when it immediately follows an Adjective agreeing with it.*

1. The taking away worldly Riches, ſometimes tendeth to the increaſing of ſpiritual Subſtance; the impoveriſhing of the Body, is the enriching of the Soul. How imprudent are they that immoderately bewail loſſes? No loſs is really great, except the loſs of Life eternal.

2. Frequent thinkings of thoſe things that concern the Soul, are neceſſary for the moſt tender Years. None can begin to ſerve God too ſoon, none ſoon enough; he that ſpendeth moſt time in the ſerving God, ſhall have the greateſt reward. But Youth is not only full of Vanity, but thinketh it may indulge Sin and Folly without blame; as if there were ſome years of our Life, which we may devote to the Devil. But what if our Lives be taken from us before the expiring of thoſe licentious Years, What an Eternity muſt we expect? Shall thoſe live with God, who died before they begun to live to him?

Rule 5. *The Engliſh Participle in* ing, *coming after a Verb of* motion, *and having* a *before it, is rendred by the firſt Supine, like as the Infinitive Mood.*

1. The Man that goes a *hunting*, *hawking*, or *viſiting* his Friends, when neceſſary buſineſs requires his care and time, prefers his Diverſion before his Profit; the Society of his Friends before the neceſſary Advantage of himſelf and his Family. Nor will any covet his Friendſhip, that is not a Friend to himſelf.

2. The Boy that goes with his Schoolfellows *a playing*, when he ought to be diligent at the Task which the Maſter hath appointed him, prefers Play before his Maſter's Love,

Love, and his own Profit; and when he is weary of Playing, he will return to his Book, but ſhall want time to prepare his appointed Exerciſes.

Rule 6. *The Participle in* ing, *after a Noun (Subſtantive, or Adjective,) that requires a Genitive Caſe, muſt be made by the Gerund in* di.

To be skilful in cheating others, is a baſe Art; Fools are wiſer than ſuch Politicians. He that only inventeth knacks of deceiving, is full of Craft, but void of Wiſdom. A wiſe Man is like a Dove for Innocency, though he be not unlike a Serpent for Caution.

Rule 7. *The Participle in* ing, *after* am, art, is, was, were, *or any Paſſive ſign, muſt be Latined not only by the Participle, but by the Verb Adjective, and in that Tenſe of it, and Number, and Perſon, which the Paſſive ſign betokens.*

1. A diligent Boy *is* always *learning*, not only while the Maſter *is inſtructing*, but alſo while other Boys *are playing*, he readeth Books which promote his Learning, or readeth over-again that which he learned in the School; he only now and then uſeth moderate Reſt and Recreation, becauſe it is neceſſary for his Health, and maketh to the ſharpning of his Wit.

2. Excellent *Apelles was* daily *drawing* ſome excellent Picture with wonderful Art; no day paſſed without a Line.

3. Thoſe that uſe not time in the beginning of their lives, will *be* even perpetually *lamenting* their Folly afterwards; they will *be* hourly *condemning* themſelves, and ſaying, Oh, at what a great price would I willingly purchaſe time paſt!

Rule 8. *The Participle in* ing, *after* from, *for* leſt that, *may elegantly be rendred by the Subjunctive Mood, with* nè *before it.*

The Providence of God keepeth us *from periſhing*; the Power of God aſſiſteth us in acting thoſe things which pleaſe him; the Grace of God keepeth us *from ſinning*; the Goodneſs of God preſerveth us *from ſuffering* Afflictions; the Death and Righteouſneſs of Chriſt have redeemed us *from dying* Eternally.

Rule

Rule 9. *The Participle in* ing, *after a Verb importing to* cease, leave, *or* give over, *is rendred by the Infinitive Mood of its proper Verb.*

1. Constancy and steadfastness, are signs of a generous Mind: He that *leaves acting* laudable things, and degenerateth into Vice, was never truly good.

2. A wise Man never *leaves learning*, till he *give over living*: He hath need of more Knowledge, that hath the greatest Wisdom.

Rule 10. *The English Participle* having, *when it stands immediately next before another Participle, which comes from a Verb Deponent, is not rendred by any particular Latin word, only is a sign that the following English must be Latined by the Participle Preter Tense of the Verb Passive.*

1. Poor Men *having gotten* Riches or Honours, grow Proud; they despise those that were equal to them; they are of more scornful Minds and Behaviour, than those that are sprung of Noble Race.

2. Humility is the true Gentility. Men honour and reverence a Nobleman that is courteous towards his Inferiors, more than him that scorneth to speak to them, or to hear their requests, who *having relied* upon their goodness, hath often intreated them.

Rule 11. Having, *coming before a Participle of a Verb Active, and* having been, *before a Passive, must be rendred by the Preterperfect (if the thing spoken of, be now doing, or will be done hereafter), or by the Preterpluperfect Tense of the Subjunctive Mood (if the thing spoken of, be past), with* cum.

1. Those were the most Noble Champions, that *having conquered* Kingdoms and Countries, spared the Inhabitants, and granted them largest Privileges. Their Clemency did not hinder their Victories; it rather made many yield to their Power, from whom they might expect Lenity; but who would Surrender to a bloody Conqueror?

2. Kings and Kingdoms are under the Power of God. God setteth up Kings; it is not the Subjects part to pull them

them down, but to obey their Authority. They are to pray for the Lives and Prosperity of Rulers; and *having gotten* a Gracious Prince, they are to bless God, who gave them him, and to defend him. He that feareth God, honoureth the King; and *having obeyed* him in Peace, hazardeth his Life for him in War.

Construction of Words betokening Time.

Reg. 1. QUÆ significant partem temporis, &c.

Rule 1. *Nouns which betoken* part *of* time, (h. e. *which Answer to the Question* [when?] *either expresst before it, or implied,) must be put in the Ablative Case.*

1. He that *always* designs to be good *next Week*, or *next Year* to amend his Life, and doth not *this Day* begin his Work, seems to endeavour to mock God: He cheateth his own Soul; he pleaseth the Devil, who loveth such hurtful delays, and perswadeth Men with all his might to disobey God, and to prejudice themselves. The Tempter promised them *longer* Life, and *space* to Repent. Men *too often* believe him, rather than God, the Fountain of all Truth. Delayers convenient season *never* comes. Let us not say, *next Year*, *next Month*, *next Week*, *next Hour*, nor *next Moment*, but embrace the offer of Eternal Happiness this present instant.

2. Q. *When wilt thou increase thy Diligence?*

A. The first day wherein we return to School.

Reg. 2. Quæ autem durationem, &c.

Rule 2. *Nouns betokening continuance of time* (h. e. *which answer to the Question*, [how long?] *expressed or understood) must be put in the Accusative Case.*

The Boy that loiters a whole Week, becomes idle afterwards, and will not Study; that Boy is wise that mingleth Study with Play, even upon Holy-days; then is Play pleasant to him at his Intervals, and his Mind is ready for Learning; so that when he returns to School, he can learn all the day without weariness; and there shall be need of no labour to the Master as to him, whilst he must strive greatly to perswade other Boys to forget their past pleasure.

1. Against

1. Against *or* for *before a word of appointed time, are to be rendred by* in, *with an Accusative Case of the word of* time.

1. He that promiseth a gift or kindness *against* the *next Week*, and delays it until the *next Year*, doth his Friend no good; gifts given *in* season, are acceptable; but delays diminish the word and thanks.

2. The Man is wise, that *in* Prosperity layeth up *against* Adversity; he that spendeth all without care and foresight, commonly wanteth afterwards without remedy; for he is uncapable to help himself, and his Friends pity him not, because he is become poor by his own neglect.

3. Detain not a whole year, what is only lent thee for a day; thy Friend may forgive thy breaking of thy promise, but he will be unwilling to lend, when thou hast need of his help the second time.

Note, *Particular Phrases of the Noun of Time, have a different Construction from the former.*

Suetonius writes of *Augustus Cæsar*, That when he purposed not to grant any thing which was requested of him, he was wont to answer the Supplicant, I will do it upon the *Greek Calends*, because no Nation beside the *Romans* had *Calends*, which Name they gave to the first day of each Month. Upon the second day the *Nones* began.

Constructions of Nouns betokening Place.

Reg. 1. SPatium loci in Accusativo, &c.

Rule 1. *Nouns that betoken how far one Place is distant from another, or any* measure *of the* length *or* breadth *of a place of a Verb, may be rendred in Latin either by the Accusative Case, or the Ablative.*

1. Our Country-house is *Twelve Miles off* from this place; my Brother and I walked hither in three hours, and we are still *Seven Miles distant* from our Inn; we must walk apace, that we may arrive thither this Night.

2 *London*

2. *London*, the chief City of *England*, is distant from *Rome* an *Hundred* and *one* and *fifty Miles*.

3. *Geographers* account, That the one Pole is *Six thousand eight hundred seventy two* English *Miles* distant from the other.

Reg. 2. Nomina Appellativa & nomina majorum, &c.

Reg. 3. Omne Verbum admittit Genitivum, &c.

Rule 2. *As a place, is the same with* in; *and if the place be a proper Name of a Country, Province, or Nation; or a Noun Substantive Common; it must be put in the Ablative Case with the Preposition* in; *but* in *or* at *a smaller Place; as a single City or Town, must be rendred by the Genitive Case, if the* Latin *Noun or Place be of the first or second Declension, and the Singular Number.*

1. I have been *in Spain*, I have dwelt *at Rome*, I abode two Years *in* another City of *Italy*. I lodged a whole Month *at Paris in France*; yet foreign Places did not delight my Mind: I had rather spend my time *at* School in *London*, than live idlely in a strange Land.

2. *Latin* Books Printed *at Amsterdam* in *Holland*, are to be preferred befor all others. *Dutch* Printers for the most part use better Letter, and take more care in Correcting.

3. When *Alexander* the Great was in *Persia*, he destroyed *Persepolis* the Royal City. *Thais* the Harlot persuaded him to destroy it, and it was wholly wasted by his Command. It stood a League off from the River *Araxis*, forty Pillars carved with wondrous Art remain Testimonies of it former Glory.

1. Hi Genitivi humi, domi, militiæ, &c.

1. *On the Ground, at home, in or at War, are rendred by the Genitive Case of the Substantives.*

A good Man always doth good to his Country; when he is at home, he discharged his Duty, by instructing his Family, and making them useful to the Commonwealth; he teacheth them Obedience towards Princes and Magistrates, that they may not be injurious to Publick Peace; he teacheth them Piety towards God; and that they may learn, he giveth them his own Example.

He knows that godly Men are the best Subjects. When he is in War (which he never enters into without just cause) he fighteth valiantly; he endureth all hardship, lieth on the Ground, wanteth Sleep, suffereth Showers and Tempests; content at his Condition, he feareth not Death, but boldly meeteth that Enemy, the most formidable of all, for the sake of God, the King, and his Country; at last he either dieth nobly in the Field, or quietly in his Bed, and all that remember him, bewail the publick Loss. None can esteem such a Man at too great a price.

2. Domi non alios secum paticur, &c.

2. *The Genitive Case*, domi, at the House, *hath never any other Adjective made to agree with it, except* meæ, tuæ, suæ, nostræ, vestræ, alienæ; domi *is never used for* Latin *to another word, but* at home, *except the* English *of one of these Pronouns come with it.*

1. A wise Man dwelleth at home, he abideth at his own House; the Fool is always busy at another Man's House, and in the mean while, he neglecteth his own Affairs.

2. He that dwells in a decayed *House*, is more safe from Envy, than the Rich Man, living in a Princely Palace; few envy the Poor, whose Condition is therefore to be esteemed happy.

Reg. 3. Verùm si proprium nomen loci, &c.

Rule 3. *When the proper Name of a* City *or* Town, *is of the Plural Number (which is when there is no Singular) or if it be of the Third Declension*, in, *or* at *such a place, it must be rendred by the Dative or Ablative.*

1. Many wise Men were born at *Athens*; many famous Philosophers. There was at *Athens* a famous *University*. The *Grecians* heretofore did so far excel all other Nations in Knowledge, that they did call all other Men *Barbarians*, in comparison of themselves; as if all Mankind were blind, besides themselves. But afterwards the Glory of *Greece* was diminished, and the *Roman* Splendor exceeded it.

2. The

2. The City *Delphos*, and the Hill *Parnassus*, were at *Phocis*, a City of *Achaia*, a Province of *Greece*. The Oracle of *Apollo* was given at *Delphos*; but when the Son of God took to himself Flesh, that Oracle, and all others, were reduced to silence.

Note, *When two Nouns Substantives, come next to each other, whereof both betoken* place; *but of a different nature, the one a Substantive proper, the other an Appellation, and yet both belong to one thing, so that they ought by Apposition, to be put both in one Case, when they so stand, yet they must not be of the same Case one with the other, but each be put in its proper Case, which it would be put in, if it stood alone.*

The Seat of the *Roman* Empire was at *Rome*, the most noble Town of *Italy*; but the Power and Strength of it, extended to the farthest known Parts of the World.

Reg. 4. Verbis significantibus motum ad locum, &c.

Rule 4. To *after a Verb of* motion, *and before a word of* place, *if the place be a proper* Name *of a City or Town, of whatsoever Declension or Number, must be rendred by the Accusative Case, without a Preposition. If a Noun Substantive Common, or the Name of a Country, by the Accusative Case, with* [ad] *or* [in].

1. Scholars go from School *to Oxford*, or *to Cambridge*, that beside the learned Languages, they may study the liberal Arts. But some are of so stupid Brains, that after that they have continued there, in the Universities, many Years, they become nothing more learned; which is greatly to be wondred at; but those that are unteachable at School, for the most part continue such. The two *Universities* are the *Eyes of the Nation*; but they cannot open the Eyes of the blind.

2. Those that apply their Minds to the study of *Physick*, are often-times sent to *Holland*, to *Leyden*; from which *Universities* famous Physicians have proceeded.

Reg. 5. Verbis significantibus motum à loco, &c.

Rule 5. From, *or* by a place, *if it be a proper Name of a smaller place, must be rendred by the Ablative Case, without a Preposition; if an Appellative, or the Name of a greater place, with a Preposition.*

1. *Julius Cæsar*, the Emperor, after that he had conquered *Britain*, built a Tower at *London*, the chief City of *Britain*; but he continued not at *London*, he appointed Rulers in his ſtead, and returned *from London* to *Italy*.

2. Idle and wicked Boys come *from* the Church, and *from* the School, more willingly than they go to them.

3. *Henry* the Eighth, King of *England*, regarded not the Threatnings and *Bulls* which came *from Italy* againſt him; he violently ſhook off the *Papal* Power, though he retained the *Roman* Religion.

Rule 6. Domus, *an Houſe or Home*, and Rus, *the Country, have in all reſpects, the Conſtruction of proper Names of Citie and Towns, as to their Caſes.*

The Conſtruction of Verbs Impersonal.

1. *VErbs Impersonal have never any Nominative Caſe before them, nor Accuſative before their Infinitive.*

2. *Not only Verbs which have* it *before them in the Engliſh, are Latined by Impersonals, but when Boys find* I, thou, he, *&c. the ſigns of Verbs Perſonals, they will ſometimes find ſuch Latin for the Verb, as is only of the Third Perſon, which Latin is an Impersonal Verb.*

Reg. 1. Hæc tria Impersonalia, &c.

1. *Three Impersonals*, viz. intereſt, refert, *and* eſt, (*which is ſometimes an Impersonal*) *require a Genitive Caſe after them, of the Noun following, except* me, thee, him, us, you, *or* whom, *come after the Engliſh of them; and thoſe Particles muſt be rendred by the Ablative Caſe of the Pronoun Poſſeſſive.*

1. It much *concerneth* Boys to avoid evil Company, as they would beware of the *Plague*; they are more hurtful to the Mind, than the moſt contagious Diſeaſe to the Body. Wicked and Prophane Play-fellows, are Tempters, which do the Devil's work; they ſometimes change a Boy of an honeſt Mind, into a vile Rebel. He that converſeth with evil Boys, at length becomes like them; he leaveth his care to pleaſe the Maſter, he giveth over his endeavouring to ſerve God, and his obeying

his Parents. They teach him Sabbath-breaking, Swearing, Lying, and all Vice, which it will be difficult to unteach him; and unless God bless some Instructions, and by Divine Power alter him, his Life being wasted in serving Sin, he perisheth for ever.

2. It *concerneth me*, and all Men to look to our selves; the World is full of Knaves and Knavery. It is hard to be known, and he is hard to be found that is fit to be trusted.

Obs. Adjiciuntur & illi Genitivi, tanti, &c.

These Impersonals besides a Genitive Case of the Person whom, *have also another Genitive of the word betokening the Degree.*

1. The greatest Caution is to be used in the presence of Boys; Masters must behave themselves very warily, lest Scholars learn evil of them; and it greatly *concerneth* Boys to imitate the Master's Virtue.

2. It little *mattereth*, whether he that instructeth be great; it is sufficient if he be good.

3. It little matters how much Money a Man have, if he be honest; honesty is worth loads of Treasure.

Reg. 2. In Dativum feruntur hæc Impersonalia, &c.

1. Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert, competit, placet, dolet, expedit, evenit, liquet, libet, nocet, obest, prodest, præstat, sufficit, vacat; *and in general all Impersonals, which have the sign* to *or* for *after them, require a Dative Case.*

1. If God please, Physick shall profit a Man; but God with-holding his Blessing, all endeavours are vain. God useth Physicians as his Servants; but unless God help them and their sick Person, they become unprofitable; he tempteth God that neglecteth using endeavours of Men; but it best agreeth with Religion, to join Prayer with Physick. God is always at leisure to do good to those that ask.

2. It greatly concerns those that are desirous to enjoy inward Peace, to believe the Omnipotency of God; it is manifest to the Eyes of the Servants of God, that he rules the World; and trust in God banisheth all fear

from the heart. Feebleneſs of mind is the miſery of thoſe that diſtruſt Divine Power and Goodneſs.

Reg. 3. Hæc Impersonalia Accuſandi, &c.

Reg. His vero attinet, pertinet, &c.

Rule 3. Juvat, decet, *and the Compounds of them, as alſo* delectat *and* oportet, *require an Accuſative Caſe without a Preposition*; attinet, pertinet, ſpectat, *an Accuſative with* ad.

1. It behoveth Men of little Wiſdom to hold their peace; a Fool ſilent, ſeemeth wiſe.

2. The Tongue is the Author of much evil; it therefore becometh a wiſe Man to reſtrain his own Tongue with the Bridle of Reaſon; it delighteth him to laugh at the folly of Pratlers; it belongeth to younger Men, eſpecially, to ſit ſilent; they may obſerve what others ſpeak, and it may be lawful for them to break ſilence, when they can produce ſomething worthy of hearing, which none elſe thought on; he that ſpeaketh warily, is praiſed highly by the wiſe.

Reg. 4. His Impersonalibus ſubjicitur, &c.

Rule 4. Pœnitet, tædet, pudet, piget; *Verbs Impersonal, require an Accuſative Caſe of the word immediately next them; (which Accuſative in the* Engliſh *ſeems as if it were the Nominative Caſe to the Verb,) and beſides that, a Genitive Caſe of the word following, which hath* of, for, *or as before it; alſo* miſeret, miſereſcit, *an Accuſative of the Perſon pitying, Genitive of the thing or perſon pitied*, e. g.

1. Good Men are weary *of* their lives among the wicked, they pity their Madneſs, they are grieved *at* their Folly; whilſt in the mean time Sinners are not aſhamed *of* their Vices; nor do they repent *of* them, till God open their Eyes.

2. Good Men only truly repent of their Sins. Hypocrites Repentance is but pretended; but they are of moſt baſe Minds, that repent *of* their good Deeds. We ought not to boaſt *of* any Actions; we muſt give God the Glory, who giveth us Power to perform them, yet we muſt do good with all our might.

3. It

3. It is worthy to be observed, how flexible the Minds of Boys are; they scarcely continue two days in the same thoughts; sometimes they keep not the same Mind two hours; when the Master layeth upon them a new Command, they seem to rejoyce, and are very forward to obey it for the present; but they soon forget their duty, and grow slack in performing it; when by their unconstant Parents they are removed from one School to another, they admire their new Master, whom before that they despised and laughed at; and they speak against their former Master, whom the day before they seemed to prefer before all the World. New and sudden things please Boys, but they are soon weary of every thing; that Boy is praise-worthy, that in his tender years beginneth to shew presages of future Constancy; and those Men are to be scorned, that in their elder years are like Children for unconstancy. Manly Boys are to be beloved; childish Men are to be slighted.

4. The Master pitieth the Scholar's Ignorance; he loveth the Scholar better than the Scholar loveth himself; which he will not now believe, but he will believe it hereafter.

Obs. Nonnulla Impersonalia remigrant, &c.

Most Impersonals are only the Third Person Singular, or Personals, which Personals are themselves also in use, as decet *from* deceo, pudet *from* pudeo, accidit *from* accido, placet *from* placeo; *but* pœnitet, tædet, *and some others, have no Personals.*

1. When God pleaseth, he turneth Evils into the Temporal Good of those that please him; it becometh not good Men to be angry with Providence; contentedness becometh Christians.

2. It is certain that all things shall conduce to the benefit of God's Servants; and God requireth of them that this thing be resolved on among them; to wit, to love him more vehemently, even when he depriveth them of worldly good things.

Reg. 5. Cœpit, incipit, desinit, debet, &c.

5. *The* English *of any of these Verbs*, viz. Cœpi, incipio, desino, debeo, soleo, *and* possum, *which are indeed Personal in their own Nature; when the* English *of any of them cometh before the Infinitive Mood of an Impersonal, the word that seemeth to be the Nominative Case to the Verb Personal must be such Case as the Infinitive Impersonal requires after it.*

1. Some begin to repent of their Talkativeness, when they have betrayed and destroyed their Friend by their lawless Tongues. We must not betray the faults of our Enemies, especially we must not say of our Friends all that we know; a wise Man speaketh evil of none, but some Men speak evil of all. Detraction is a Weed that poysoneth the Reputation of many, which groweth only in base Minds.

2. Diligent Boys use to be ashamed to give place to their equals in Learning; they are resolved that none shall excel them; they give the Master great hope; shame worketh great things, it sometimes pursuadeth those, that promises and threatenings could not move.

The Constructions of Adverbs.

Reg. 1. EN & ecce demonstrandi, &c.

En *and* [ecce] *are to be used for* see, behold, lo, *and not* vide, cerne, &c. *When one calls upon another to observe, or take notice of; and if a Noun Substantive come next any of them, that Noun must be put in the Nominative Case. Except the word be spoken in contempt or blame, and then they will have an Accusative.*

1. Behold the love of God towards Sinners, he forgiveth Men their greatest and most vile Offences; he receiveth those into his Favour, whom he hath cause to hate because of their Wickedness; repenting Sinners are welcome to the Arms of his Mercy; but behold the Adamantine hardness of Mens hearts, who refuse to return to him, and to accept his Mercy; they prefer the pleasures of Sin before Eternal Joy, they lose their Souls to win a gilded nothing.

2. *Lo* the folly of Children, who love Play rather than Learning, that think him the beſt Maſter that giveth them oftneſt leave to play; but thoſe Maſters are to be blamed, that pleaſe their Scholars to their hurt.

Reg. 2. Quædam Adverbia loci, &c.

2. *Adverbs of* quantity, *time* and *place, and* [inſtar], *require the Noun following them to be of the Genitive Caſe.*

1. The Nations of the World have come to that paſs of Wickedneſs, that the Earth is like Hell, and many Men have degenerated into Devils. Wickedneſs and Idolatry over-ſpread the greateſt part of the World; there is Profeſſion enough, but little true Religion; true Chriſtians are hated; ſome that call themſelves the Servants of God, and are accounted Saints, bear hearts full of all hatred, envy, and malice againſt others. Pious frauds, ignorance, licentiouſneſs, contentions, divide almoſt the whole World amongſt them.

2. How much is the Veneration of Learning diminiſhed among Men! Heretofore Learned Men were valued at a great rate, they were thought worthy of Honour; but now Men are fond of Ignorance, they ſoon think that they have gotten Learning enough; ſome are ſo ſordidly ignorant, that they deſire the utter Extirpation of Learning out of the World; they pretend the baniſhment of Learning would promote the true Religion, but they are miſtaken; Learned Men are the beſt and ſtrongeſt Pillars of the Church and State.

Tempori, luci, veſperi, *are uſed as Adverbs, though Dative Caſes of Nouns.*

Rule 3. *Adverbs which are derived of Adjectives, govern the ſame after them, with the Adjective that they come of.*

He that cannot conceal his Friend's Secrets from thoſe that ask him, but diſcloſeth whatſoever is committed to his truſt, acteth not only unpleaſantly to his Friends, but hurtfully to himſelf; for he that behaves himſelf moſt warily of all Men, and liveth more watchfully than other Men, yet he may happen to do ſomething, which being known, he may be deprived of his

good Name; and he that is void of Knavery, sometimes hath need of Art in managing his Affairs; which if it be revealed, he obtaineth not his end; he is defeated of his purpose. Therefore punish not his Crimes, nor his innocent Designs, that trusteth thee, relying upon thine honesty. If thou betray thy Friend, thou shalt change his love into hatred, his esteem of thee into contempt. Every one is *so much* wiser, by *how much* he is more silent.

Reg. 4. Adverbia Diversitatis, aliter, secus, &c.

Rule 4. Aliter, secus, ante, post; *Adverbs require an Ablative Case after them, of the Nouns betokening* quantity.

1. Men and Boys think liberty to Sin, sweet; but all will find far *otherwise*. Sinners enjoy deceitful pleasure *a little while*; but that pleasure cheateth them of Eternal Paradise; *a little while after* they must pass to Eternal Sorrow. They are fools that sell Heaven at so low a price. He is happier, whose Condition is imbittered with many outward Miseries all his Life, and obtaineth Heavenly Glory, than the greatest Prince, that *after* his Pomp, lives with cursed Spirits for ever.

2. He is a Lier, that denieth the same thing this hour, which he most strongly affirmed *a little* before; no credit is to be given to his words.

3. The Anger of a Fool is not to be feared; he threatneth Men with dreadful things; but he hath not cunning enough to act revenge; he behaveth himself *far otherwise* than he speaketh. A politick Foe is indeed formidable.

Reg. 5. Cedo flagitantis, &c.

Rule 5. *For* let me see, give me, fetch me, *and such like Expressions, it is more elegant to make* cedò *the Adverb, with an Accusative after it, than to render them by the proper Verb.*

Let me see that Book; *reach me* also thy Pen; I will write these Instructions, which I have *given thee*; otherwise thou wilt forget them: Thou seldom remembrest good Admonitions.

6. *These Adverbs require the Verb coming next them, to be put in the Subjunctive, and no other Mood*, viz.

Quoad,

Quasi, as tho. *Tanquam*, } as { *Dum*, until.

8. They that, when they are diseased in Body, neglect sending for the Physician, *till* the Distemper hath gotten greater strength, than which Nature can resist, despise their own Health, *as tho* Life were worth nothing. To cure them will be difficult.

9. Children neglected *until* Vice have taken deep root in them, are hardly reformed; it is more easy to bend an Osier, or a Twig, than to twist an Oak. Vice nourished many years, becomes a Possessor at last, and is loth to leave its accustomed dwelling. Parents are to be blamed that neglect their Duty in the beginning, *as if* they desired their Childrens future Debauchery.

Rule 7. *These Adverbs, if a Nominative Case and Verb come next them, require it to be put in the Indicative, and no other Mood.*

Donec, *so long as*; Ut, *after that*; Dum, *whilst*, or *as long as*.

1. *So long as* the Master is ignorant of the Disposition of his Scholar, he spendeth his labour in vain.

2. But *after that* he findeth out his Inclination, and useth methods agreeable thereto; his labours prosper, the Boy encreaseth in understanding, *whilst* the Master easily discharges his Duty.

Rule 8. Ne *for* Non, *in forbidding, requireth the Verb following to be of the Imperative, or Subjunctive Mood, but rather the Subjunctive. When it is used for* lest that, *or* lest, *always the Subjunctive.*

Resist not the wholesome Laws of the Land, wherein thou dwellest, which are the Princes defence, and the Peoples best safeguard, *lest* thou provoke not only Earthly Lords, but also God, the Sovereign Lawgiver, who hath commanded us to obey the Powers which he hath set over us.

9. *The rest of the Adverbs are such as need no Rule, for the Case that follows them; and as to the Mood, may indifferently have after them either a Verb of the Indicative Mood, or of*

the

the Subjunctive; so that to name them, would be superfluous, as well as to heap up multitude of Sentences, wherein Boys should exemplify their indifferency. Nor is it very pertinent to give Boys Examples to demonstrate what they must do, in those things wherein they may do as they list.

The Construction of Conjunctions.

Reg. 1. CONjunctiones Copulativæ & disjunctivæ, &c.

Rule 1. *Those Conjunctions, which are called Copulatives and Disjunctives; also* Tanquam, velut, item, quasi, quam, præterquam, ceu, sic, *(which are properly Adverbs) and* sed, ni, nisi, cum, tum, videlicet, scilicet, *when any of these come between two Verbs, they require them both to be put in the same Mood and Tense; and if they come between two Nouns, they must be of the same Case.*

1. Covetous Men behave themselves, as though they thought themselves created for this purpose, that they may enjoy worldly Delights; they desire nothing else: But Men were born to greater things; Beasts and Creatures without Life, answer the designed purpose of their Creation, and fulfil the Will of God better than Muckworms.

2. How many Men speak more honestly than they act? No Man confesseth himself a Knave, but many are so; many promise, but break their promise. How happy were that World, in which all Men speak according to their thoughts! All would enjoy Peace and Plenty.

Note, *These Copulatives couple not like Tenses, when a plain sign of a different Tense stands before either one of them, which is not before the other.*

1. Honesty is the best Policy, and will appear the greatest Wisdom; all honest Men find not worldly Success; but though they want outward good things, God will make up to them that defect by better riches.

2. Negligent Boys have more Mirth and Jollity, than the industrious; but diligence maketh lovely, and will procure Honour both to Boys and Men.

3. Fools

3. Fools mock at ſin; but except they have ſeen at ſome time the folly of that deriſion, and ſhall repent of that miſtake, they ſhall after their Mirth ſuffer Torments, in which they ſhall not be able to be merry.

N. B. *If a Conjunction Copulative come between two Nouns, one of which requires a particular Caſe by one Rule of* Grammar, *the other muſt of neceſſity have another Caſe by another Rule, then it does not join like Caſes together.*

1. Drunkards are to be accuſed not only of prodigality, nor only of beaſtlineſs, but of both; he that is given to Wine, is unfit for any publick or private Buſineſs; he maketh himſelf daily void of reaſon; he is unworthy of the name of a Man; he changeth Humanity into Beſtiality.

2. Diligent Boys are induſtrious at School, and at Home; they uſe their utmoſt endeavour, the Maſter ſeeing or not ſeeing.

2. *Theſe Conjunctions following, if a Verb come after them, require it neceſſarily to be put in the Subjunctive Mood,* viz. Etſi, tametſi, etiamſi, quanquam, quamvis, licet, cum, (*for ſeeing that*) ne, an, num, (*for whether*) ut *and* ſi.

Rule 3. *Theſe Conjunctions require the Verb following them, to be put in the Indicative Mood,* viz. Quando *when*, Quoniam *becauſe*, Quandoquidem *in as much as*, Quippe *becauſe*, Ut *as how*.

Rule 4. *Some are indifferent, or may have after them either the Indicative Mood, or Subjunctive,* viz. Quod *that*, Poſtquam *after that*.

Ni } *un-* } Quia *Becauſe*, Nunquam *Never*.
Niſi } *leſs* } Quam *Than*, Priuſquam *Before that*.

Conſtruction of Prepoſitions.

Reg. 1. PRæpoſitio in Compoſitione.

Rule 1. *A Prepoſition joined to a Verb, to compound it, governeth the ſame Caſe after it, as it would if it ſtood by it ſelf; or a Verb compounded with a Prepoſition, governeth the ſame Caſe after it, which the Prepoſition governeth, that it is compounded withal.*

1. All

1. All die not in the same age. Some go out of the World in their Youth, others proceed to Manhood; some reach to Old Age, none is sure to live another Year; yet none is content to die this Year; every one desires to live another. Those are most happy that are always prepared. Whosoever is removed out of this World into Heaven, cannot die too soon. God knoweth the most convenient Season to bring forth his Servants from their miseries.

2. The blessed Angels, swift Spirits, and of purest Sanctity, are always ready to do the Will of God. By them the Souls of dying Saints are carried to Eternal Blessedness, in which they shall continue happy to Eternity.

Reg. 2. Verba composita, cum, à, ab, &c.

Rule 2. *Verbs compounded with* à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in, *may better have an Ablative Case after them, with their Preposition repeated, than without it*, e. g.

1. It is a Fool's part to see the faults of others, and to be ignorant of his own; many men are forward to reprove others, that commit the same Crimes; they readily endeavour to pull out the Mote from the Eye of their Neighbour, but they neglect their own. He that reproveth others, is sometimes guilty of pride; but he that amendeth his own Life, will more easily perswade his Fellow.

2. It is worthy of Observation, that those men which hate Piety, and do not practise it, yet retain a secret reverence for good Men, and are sometimes afraid to commit evil before them. When they are about to step into the filthy road of Vice, they draw back their foot from the place, till the good Man have passed by. How great reverence ought Religion to have among her Friends, if her Beauty even amaze her Enemies!

Rule 3. *The Preposition* in, *hath an Accusative Case after it, in all Significations, except when it is* Latin *for* in, *and then it hath an Ablative.*

The

The provident *Ant* condemneth careleſs Sluggards; ſhe layeth up food in plenty, againſt a time of ſcarcity; ſhe carrieth her ſtore into her hidden Granaries; in *Summer* ſhe hoardeth for *Winter*.

Rule 4. Subter, under, *may have after it either an Ablative Caſe or an Accuſative.*

5. *If a Noun follow* tenus, up to, *which is to be governed of it, which Noun is of the Plural Number, it muſt be put in the Genitive Caſe.*

A comely Coat reacheth from the middle of the Legs, up to the Shoulders.

For the various ſignification of Prepoſitions, Boys may conſult, for their Information, the Weſtminſter *Introduction, where their Caſes are likewiſe largely diſcourſed.*

Of Interjections.

Rule 1. HEU, *an Interjection of exclaiming, may have after it either a Nominative, or an Accuſative Caſe*; ah, *and* proh, *rather an Accuſative.*

1. Oh! the wickedneſs of thoſe men, that thirſt after the Blood of their Neighbours! Men of ſuch barbarous Cruelty ought to be thruſt out into the Fields, among the Beaſts, whom they are like, except that they exceed them in bloodineſs: Ah! the horrid Murthers that ſome have committed.

2. There is not an Atheiſt in Hell, thoſe that in this World laughed at all ſerious things, when they come to Eternity, but cry out, Alas, my folly! Alas, my ignorance and madneſs! *oh*, the diſmal effects which unbelief produceth! Heretofore I thought Hell was a Dream; but now I find I my ſelf only dreamed, and now that I am awakened, I begin to know, and to exerciſe my Senſes too late.

Rule 2. Hei *and* væ, *requere a Dative Caſe after them.*

Wo be to thoſe that reſiſt the Almighty God: He is the ſureſt Friend, but the ſharpeſt Enemy: His Love is ſweet, but his Wrath is bitter: His Favour is Heaven, but his Frowns are Hell. *Wo, wo*, to all that do

not

not pleaſe him. Thoſe that mock at his Threatnings, ſhall tremble at the execution of them.

The end of the Sentences, which are fitted as Examples to the Grammar Rules.

Additional Notes.

1. IN making *Latin*, Boys are apt to be greatly puzled, and at a loſs, to know when *that* is a Relative, and ought to be rendred by *qui*, and when it is a Conjunction to be Latined by *quod*, or *ut*. Let them therefore, for their help in that difficulty, obſerve theſe following Notes; *viz.*

1. It is neither a Relative, nor a Conjunction, when it ſtands the firſt word after any Point or Stop greater than a *Comma*: As after a *Colon*, *Semi-colon*, or *Period*: But in ſuch places it is to be rendred by the Pronoun demonſtrative *iſte*.

2. *That* is always a Relative, when it may be turned into *which*, which muſt be tried in reading over the *Engliſh* Sentence wherein it is, and judging warily how the Senſe would bear it. If it cannot be altered *ſalvo ſenſu*, it is a Conjunction.

3. There is always between the Conjunction *that*, and the Verb, a Nominative Caſe to the Verb; but between *that* the Relative and the Verb, ſtandeth no Nominative Caſe, except the Relative be not the Nominative Caſe; but that is uſually the Nominative Caſe to the Verb it ſelf.

4. The Conjunction *that*, commonly comes next after a Verb, which ſignifies *ſpeaking*, *knowing*, *finding*, *hearing*, or ſome ſuch like *Engliſh*.

5. It is neither a Conjunction, nor a Relative, when there followeth immediately after it a Subſtantive, which muſt be put into ſome oblique Caſe, to be governed of, or to follow the Verb next foregoing *that*. In ſuch Caſe it muſt be rendred by the Pronoun Demonſtrative, *iſte*, e. g.

1. *Al*

1. *All Men despise* that *Man*, that *boasteth of his own Exploit*; Tat *Man, whose Acts Fame doth magnify, retaineth his Honour without diminishing, even after his Death; but whosoever praiseth himself, bewrayeth Vanity. All Men will think, that he attributeth too much to himself. Deserve praise of others, but still retain an humble mind.*

2. That *man was of a base mind*, that *having resolved to get himself a Name, studied to execute some monstrous Villany, for the sake of which, men might talk of him: He chose to be famous for Impiety, rather than* that *his Name should be buried in Oblivion. But the Emperor, in whose Land the Wretch dwelt, frustrated him of his purpose, by forbidding his Name to be mentioned in the History, though the Fact was chronicled.*

2. *That*, a Relative, is sometimes understood in the *English*, and must be exprest in *Latin*, by making *qui* for it. And then is it understood, when in a Sentence there wanteth either a Nominative Case to the Verb, or an Accusative Case to follow the Verb, which cannot be supplied from any other word in the Sentence, *e. g.*

There is none, except a Fool, will sell his Inheritance that *his Father left him, for nothing. There is none, except a very indigent Man, will sell his Inheritance at all. An Estate which hath descended from Father to Son, ought to be transmitted to Posterity. There is nothing Prodigality loves so well, as to spend lavishly the fruits of the Predecessor's Industry; there is nothing a Wise Man desireth more, than* that *his Children enriched by him, may bless him after his Death. God performeth the Promises he hath made to Industrious Men.*

3. It is a usual thing for Boys to err in rendring the *English* of the Present Tense Passive, by making it by the Participle of the Preter Tense with *Sum, es, est*, which must always be carefully avoided; because that Participle with *est*, maketh up all the Preter Tenses, which must be confounded with the Present, *e. g.*

He is praised that is of humble behaviour towards all men: Courtesie hath a wonderful effect; the proud man is abhorred, the meek are honourable.

Obs. In such Cases as these, or in any other of like nature, where Boys are apt by reason of the *English* ambiguity to translate wrong, it may not be altogether unprofitable for them to make the Expression in which the ambiguity is, both ways, *h. e.* First write according to the Caution; and afterwards as they would, or are wont to make it, but within a Parenthesis with *non* before it.

4. Boys generally conclude, that when they have *may, would, might, should*, the Verb must be of the Potential Mood, according to the signs mentioned in their Accidence, (to which also *ought* is there added, and *can*, but not rightly.) But sometimes *those* are not meerly signs, but must be made by a distinct Verb; and that is when the seeming sign betokens something of duty, lawfulness, or earnestness of desire, when they have an Emphasis in them; otherwise, when they intimate nothing Emphatical, they are only signs of particular Tenses of their Verbs, *e. g.*

1. *Boys* may *play when the Master hath given leave; but without leave they* may *not loiter one hour. Idle Boys* would *fain escape doing their duty; they* would *rejoice if they* might *play whole Weeks.*

2. *Children* should *willingly obey their Parents, but for the most part they are rebellious. Obedience is a lovely Sacrifice in the sight of God, whom all* should *study to please.*

3. *If Children* should *govern themselves, to what misery* would *they bring themselves? Yet they are seldom content with the most favourable Government; they have a desire either to change, or to be quite left to their own will. Their unripe Reason is like* Phaeton's *Pride, who* would *govern a Chariot, which was beyond his strength. Let them use Patience; he that cannot obey well, will never command right.*

5. The English of the Verb *habeo*, is often mistaken, because it is sometimes only the sign of another Verb. But when the English words, *have, had, hath, hast*, have only a Substantive after them, and not a Verb, they are to be rendred by *habeo*. And Boys are very apt to make

make *had* by the Preterpluperfect Tense of *habeo*; whereas it ought to be rendred by the Preterperfect; though when it is a sign only, it is of the Preterpluperfect. Let caution therefore be used in rendring these, or the like Sentences, *viz.*

1. *The most excellent* Artificers *correct their own work; they have more quick Eye-sight than other men; they see something deficient after that they have used the greatest care.*

2. *An Accurate Painter, having striven to draw a most deformed Woman, had expresi'd her ugly Features so exactly, and to the life; that when he viewed the Picture earnestly, standing in his Shop, he burst out into so loud and long a laughter, that he kill'd himself thereby: He* had *not power to moderate his Passion. The excess of mirth as well as of sorrow, is fatal. He* had *lived, if he* had *not been so ingenious.*

6. *Had had* is the Subjunctive Mood Preterpluperfect Tense, must never be the Indicative, *e. g.*

1. *How many men may say, I* had had *Money enough, if I* had *not been too lavish?*

2. *How many Boys may confess, I* had had *Learning, if I* had had *Wisdom to discern mine own Advantage, and ply my Book?*

7. Boys are oftentimes at a loss concerning *soleo*, and *uti*, because both signify to *use*. But they must remember, that *soleo* is never *Latin* for to *use*, but when a Verb comes next to *use*, in all other Cases *utor*.

8. When there is a Passive sign in the *English*, before a Verb, the *Latin* for which Verb is a Neuter; if it be a sign of a Present Tense Passive, make it by the Preterperfect Tense of the Neuter; if a sign of the Preterimperfect Tense Passive, make it by the Preterpluperfect of the Neuter, *e. g.*

1. *He that useth to forget those things which he desires to remember, must use helps to strengthen his Memory, or use the greater diligence and attention when he is reading, that he may retain profitable Instructions; for when they are once passed out of the Memory, there is need of fresh reading to recal them.*

2. *All*

1. *All Men* use *to desire Riches, but all do not* use *Riches rightly; when they are come to Honour and Wealth, they still are greedy to heap* Pelion *upon* Ossa, *to add more to much. He that desireth nothing, wanteth nothing. It is a wise Man's part to moderate all Affections; that is a man of greatness of Spirit, that could live cheerfully, if his Riches were lost, and all his Friends were gone.*

9. Because the Passive Verbs have properly no Preter-Tenses, but use Participles, with *sum* or *qui*, therefore that Participle, even when it is become a Preter-Tense, must be made to agree in Gender with the Nominative Case to the Verb, as if it were an Adjective.

10. *And, not*, two Particles with a Verb between them, or a sign of a Verb, may not so well be rendred by *& non*, as by *nec* set before the Verb.

11. *Like* is not to be rendred by the Adjective *similis*, but by the Adverb, when the *English* of any Verb stands next before *like*, except the *English* of *sum*, and then it is an Adjective, *e. g.*

1. *Honesty hath always been esteemed laudable by those that do not practise it. It is to be bewailed, that men know the evil of Sin, and see the beauty of Piety; yet love Deformity, and neglect Beauty. How many men act* like *Weathermen, that look one way, and row another? That are* like Medea, *who confessed of her self, that she approved better things, but followed wickedness.*

2. *Conscience erecteth a Tribunal in mens own Breasts; it trieth, condemneth, and punisheth Offenders; its Judgment hath always been found impartial. It sometimes sleepeth, and is stupid a long while, but ye at length awaketh; it is dumb many times a great while, but when it speaketh, it telleth the truth, and doth not flatter. It punisheth by intolerable horror, and spareth not. The gnawings of Conscience torment* like *a biting Serpent; the Harpies and Furies, of which the Poets write, the Snakes (which instead of Hair) encompassed their Heads, are the dreadful Lashes of this Executioner. Hearken to* Pythagoras's *Counsel, who bids thee be afraid of thy self, when*

when there is no observer present. The reproofs of Conscience are sometimes Medicinal, but always bitter.

12. *A* before a Participle in *ing*, and after a Verb of motion, must be rendred into *Latin* by the first Supine, the future in *rus*, or the Gerund in *dum* with *ad*. But if the Participle note something to be now in hand, or doing, it must be made by the Verb from whence the Participle cometh; and in such Tense as the Passive sign (which usually is found before such Participles) requireth.

13. *A* or *an*, before words of *time*, is rendred by *in*, and an Ablative Case of the word of *time*, e. g.

1. *The careless Tradesman, that goes a hunting when he hath need of continual presence in his Shop, never grows rich; but the most diligent House-keeper may go a hunting once a year.*

2. *The idle Boy that goes a seeking Birds-Nests, or useth any such like sport, when he ought to be at School, never becomes learned; but the most plodding Lad goes a playing once a year. If he recreateth himself twice a day, for a quarter, or half an hour, he nevertheless encreaseth learning.*

3. *The Sun once a day compasseth the vast Globe, unless we say with the new Philosophers, that the Sun is the* Center, *and the Earth moveth.*

14. When for a Neuter *English* (which is when the signification of a Verb, terminates *in*, or reaches no further than the thing, which seems to be the Nominative Case to it,) Boys find a *Latin* Verb, which is an Active; the Passive of that *Latin* Verb, must be used for the Neuter *English*, unless there be a Verb Neuter of the same signification, distinct from the Active.

15. The Particle *about*, is rendred divers ways; *viz.* Sometimes it is the same with *concerning*, and must be rendred by *de*; sometimes the same with *near-upon*, *thereabouts*, and must be rendred by *plus minus*. Before a word of *time*, it is to be rendred by *sub*, or *circiter*; before a *place*, or *person*, by *circa*, or *circum*; before the Infinitive Mood, *to be*, by *futurum est*, impersonally, with *ut*; e. g.

1. *Boys*

1. *Boys and Parents are very forward to remove from one School to another. Boys remove because they hope to find more easy Tasks. Idleness is their only Argument.*

2. *The Heavens move most swiftly, they never stop their course. Dull Souls are unlike the Heavenly Bodies, for they are loth to Action, they covet perpetual Rest.*

3. *He that is most skilful in any Art, hath need of clearer knowledge: He is not ashamed to confess, that he is still ignorant; but the fool having spent a few hours* about *his Studies, thinketh himself a wise man; he that hath knowledge enough, hath none.*

4. *All Boys are not of equal Wit. Some Boys having tarried at School* about four *or* five *years, make a great progress: But others spend* seven *years* about *nothing, though the Master faithfully use his endeavour; and when they are* about to be *removed from School, they are no whit the better. It were to* be *wished Parents would discern the Tempers of their Children, and would not strive to compel them to learning against nature. Some are born for the Court, others for the Pulpit, but others for the Plow.*

16. *According* with *to* after it, is made by *secundum*, with *as* after it, by *prout, proinde ut; accordingly* by *proinde.*

17. The rendring the Particle *after*, createth great mistakes in Exercises; let Boys therefore observe, that *after* must be rendred by *postquam*, when a Nominative Case comes next it; by *a, ab*, or *post*, when a Noun comes next it, which is of any other Case; when it betokens *according to*, by *de*, or *ad*. After a Noun of time, by *post* the Adverb; and *quam*, if a Verb follow. Afterwards by *postea, hereafter, posthac*, e. g.

1. After *Cæsar had conquered* Pompey, *his Potent Adversary, he enjoyed quietly the Imperial Seat*, according to *his desire. But ungrateful and cruel men stabb'd him* after *many noble Exploits, whereby he increased the* Roman *Glory.* According *as it happened to many* Roman *Emperors* after him.

2. *There are different ways of writing and reading in the World; some write and read from the right hand to the left,*

left, after *the manner of the* Hebrews; *others from the top to the bottom*, after *the* Chineſe *faſhion*: *But* Engliſh *Men from the left hand to the right.*

3. *He that is now jovial, ſhall be ſorrowful hereafter; he that committeth a raſh act, ſhall repent of it afterward.*

18. The Particle *again*, after *as big, as ſtrong*, and ſuch like Expreſſions, is made by *duplo*, with a Comparative degree before it.

19. *Againſt* before a Noun of time, muſt be rendred by *in*, with an Accuſative Caſe before a Verb, with its Nominative Caſe, by *dum*; after *mind, thought, will, law, cuſtom, right*, by *prater*. Over-againſt *è Regione, ex adverſo.*

20. *All* joined with a Subſtantive of the Singular Number, is rendred by *totus*, not by *omnis*, (for *omnis* is Latin for *every*) before a Subſtantive Plural by *omnis*, not by *totus*; *at all* with a Negative word before, by *omnino*, e. g.

1. *A* Camel *is as good again for Travelling as an Horſe, becauſe he is not weary; and he will continue ſtrong* five *or* ſix *days without water, which an Horſe wanteth twice a-day.*

2. *A cunning Merchant layeth up his Wares againſt a time of ſcarcity; but the Price ſometimes falls againſt his expectation and will.* All *his hope of ſelling dear is loſt*; all *his crafty Contrivances do not ſucceed as he would wiſh. But at other times his forecaſt produceth treble profit. None obtaineth his deſire at* all *times. He is not diſcouraged* at all, *but rather increaſeth his Caution.*

21. *At, as*, many times anſwer each other by way of Compariſon in the ſame Sentence, and muſt then be rendred, the former by *æque*, the latter by *ac*; or the former by *tam*, the latter by *quam*.

22. *At*, before a word betokening *time, price, manner, inſtrument*, or *gueſt*, muſt have no Latin made for it; it is only a ſign of an Ablative Caſe. *To be at, to be preſent at*; *interſum* with a Dative, *adſum* with an Ablative, *e.g.*

1. *A poor Man is as happy without Riches, if he enjoy contentedneſs of mind, as the richeſt Earl, that coveteth greater Honour.*

2. *He*

2. *He that ſpendeth the night at Cards, and the day in Drinking, bereaveth himſelf of his Reaſon, and his Children, and all the Family of due Suſtenance. Be not preſent at unlawful Games, leſt thou be tempted to triſle away thy time with them, leſt thou become as fooliſh as they.*

23. *Become of*, is to be Latined by *fio.* with *de.*

24. *Before*, when a Verb with its Nominative Caſe, comes next after it, is to be rendred by *antequam*; when a word of *time*, or *place*, by *ante, heretofore, antehac.*

25. *Being*, before *to*,-with a Verb, is made by a Participle in *rus.*

26. *Both*, ſpoken of *two*, is made by *ambo*, or *uterque*; but when *both* is anſwered by *and, both* is rendred by *cum, and* by *tum*, e. g.

1. *What will* become of *the man, that loſeth all his worldly Friends, and hath not hope in an Heavenly Father, whoſe Favour leſſeneth the terror of all other loſſes.*

2. *He that getteth to himſelf better riches, before he loſeth lower things, is rich after all his poverty. He that improveth time to get ſure hope of a bleſſed Eternity before he dieth, is happy not only after, but before Death. Being to depart out of the World, he rejoyceth.*

3. *Wealth and Honour are* both *vain: They* both *ſometimes make the owner worſe. He that layeth out his time upon them,* both *miſſeth of better things, and even ſometimes is fruſtrated of his Expectation when he hath obtained them.*

27. *But* is rendred ſeveral ways; after *cannot*, it is rendred by *non*, after *not doubting*, *not queſtioning*, and ſuch like Expreſſions, by *quin*; but when it intimates *ſo many, ſo often*, or any *quantity*, and no more, by *ſolummodo*; *but for*, by *abſque*; *not but that, non quod non.* When it excepteth ſome *Perſon*, or *Thing*, from what we have been ſaying before, by *præter*, or *niſi*; ſometimes it is the ſame with *who not*, and muſt be rendred by *qui non.*

28. *Either* ſometimes ſignifies *one of the two*, and is then rendred by *utervis, alteruter*; ſometimes it is immediately anſwered by *or*, and then rendred by *aut, vel.*

29. *Eſt*

29. *Else* after *who?* or *what?* Interrogatives; after *something, nothing, some-body, no-body*, is rendred by *alius*; for *otherwise*, alias.

30. *So far from* having *that* after it, is rendred by *adeo ut*, with *ut*. *As far as*, by *quantum*, or *quoad*, e. g.

1. *A Fool* cannot but *laugh at all times*, but *when he cries. He knows nothing* but *those two extreams. He* doubteth not, but *he hath reason enough to laugh, if he see* but *the wagging of a feather by the wind. There is none*, but *is apt to laugh at such an Idiot; but we ought rather to pity his hard circumstances*, but for *the kindness of God we had been like him. It becometh Boys to be of a modest countenance and behaviour, and not to signify by their faces, either mirth or sorrow before Superiors.*

2. *Gold and Honour are two great Idols of the World, worshipped by more than used to appear at* Ephesus, *to worship the great Goddess* Diana. *But he that preferreth* either *of them before godliness, or setteth them in a chief Room of his heart, as his God, is an Idolater, as well as he that worshippeth Images, or bendeth his Knees to a Marble Statue. There are some that desire* nothing else; *they will obtain them*, else *a Tempest is more calm than their discontented Mind. But if their wishes succeed, they are so far from being happy, that* as far as *can be observed, they are less satisfied than when they had* nothing. *The rich Man would fain be richer.*

31. *For*, before a Verb with its Nominative Case, must always be made by *nam*, or *enim*. Sometimes it is the same with *as*, and must be then rendred by *in*, with an Accusative before the names of Diseases, by *contra*; before other Substantives, by *pro*.

32. *Hither*, with *the* before it, is always an Adjective, and must be rendred by *citerior*, made to agree with its Substantive, which always stands next after it. When it betokens *place*, by *huc*.

33. *How*, before Adjectives and Adverbs (derived of Adjectives) must not be made by *quomodo*, but by *quam*. *How*, with *much*, and a Comparative Degree, by *quanto*.

34. *But if*, must be rendred by *sin*; *but if not*, by *sin minus*.

35. *Not*, is omitted after the Verb *caveo*, e. g.

1. *It becometh Children to pull off their Hats, when they meet those to whom Reverence is due from them.* For *by uncovering their Heads, and bending their Bodies, they shew an humble and obedient Mind. Those Parents are to be blamed, that teach not Civility. But* how much *more ignorant are they, that think it a Sin to use any respectful Behaviour, and forbid their Children strictly to salute any Man?* How *clownish are those Children that are educated by such Parents?*

2. *Take heed thou offend not thy Parents. But if thou hast done any thing worthy of their Anger, be sorry for thy Crime; beg their Pardon upon thy bended Knees, for a token of thy Repentance. If thou do so, they will perhaps pardon thee*; but if not, *thou must expect punishment.*

3. *Sometimes warm things are good* for *the* Tooth-ach, *and sometimes cold things. But sometimes no Medicine can cure the Pain. Who would think, the aking of so small a Bone, should produce so grievous a Torment?*

4. *If thou stand on the* hither *side of a Brook, which hath a narrow Bridge, and seest thy Superior on the further side, by no-means pass over, till he have first passed. Give place, in all places, to those that excel thee.*

36. If *let* stand before a Verb of the first Person Singular, the Verb must be made of the Subjunctive Mood.

37. *Like* is not always an Adjective, but sometimes a Verb, *viz.* when it hath a Person before it in the *English*; when next after a Verb, *similiter*.

38. *Less*, with a Substantive with which it may agree, is to be made by *minor*; with a Verb, or *no, nothing, much, little*, by *minus* an Adverb.

39. *Much*, with a Substantive, is to be made by *multus*; with a Verb, by *magnopere*; before Comparatives and Superlatives, by *longè*; or if *how* be joined with *much*, by *quanto*; if so, *tanto*.

40. *More* for *rather*, is made by *magis*; for *hereafter*, by *posthac*: *The more*, in the former part of a Sentence, by

by *quo*; in the latter part, answering to the former, by *eo*, e. g.

1. Let *a Boy of ingenious Mind be commended, and he will study the more deligently. The more he is praised*, the more *he coveteth further Recommendation.* Let *me teach those Boys that are of tender Disposition, and my labour shall be easy; but naughty Boys are always mingled among the good. No Teacher is free from Vexation.*

2. *Idle Boys*, like *careless Masters*; *but Parents chuse those that are Industrious and Vertuous, that their Children may be like them. Parents care is* less, *when the Master's care is certain.*

3. *The Man provoketh* less, *that knoweth not his Duty, than he that neglecteth wilfully.* Much *knowledge rendreth a Man unexcusable.* How much more *safe is he that is invincibly Ignorant, than he that is unmoveably Obstinate?*

4. *Many Men see sometimes the folly of Vice, and say, to themselves, I will never more commit that Wickedness; but they forget their purposes, they strive more to find out occasions of Sin, than to avoid them.*

41. *Most* with a Substantive coming immediately after it, is made by *plerique.*

42. *Neither*, when it relates to two things spoken before, is made by *Neuter*; when *nor* answereth it, it is made by *nec.*

43. Never with *the* before a Comparative, is rendred by *nihil.*

44. *Of* after a Substantive, and before *mine, thine, ours, yours, his* and *theirs*, is omitted, and that word, which comes after *of* in the English, made in the Latin to agree with the Substantive, which went before *of.*

45. *Over*, after a Verb, is a sign only of a Dative Case, and must have no Latin word made for it, *e. g.*

1. Most *Authors, which Boys read, have some hurtful things in them, but they are not therefore to be rejected: Wholesome Herbs grow among poysonous ones, and yet are never* the *worse. Good Boys* neither *regard nor delight in those things which are unseemly.*

2. *A Friend* of mine *lost his Honour* the *same day in which a Friend of* yours *was created Earl. But the conditions of human things are uncertain. God ruleth the World. To some he giveth both pleasure and profit; to others he vouchsafeth* neither.

46. *Self* or *selves*, must be rendred either by *ipse*, or by adding *met* to the Pronoun foregoing, except in the Pronoun *se*.

47. *Since* for *seeing that*, is rendred by *cum*, or *quandoquidem*; for *from* or *after*, by *a*, *ab*, or *ex*. For *ago* by *abhinc*, in other Cases *ex quo*.

48. *Such* before a Substantive, by *talis* or *ejusmodi*; when an Adjective comes next to it, by *tam*, *adeo*.

49. *That* after *same*, is rendred by *qui*, or *ac*, after words of fear in affirmative Speeches by *ne*; if *not* be added, by *ut*, or *ne non*, e. g.

1. *He is best that thinketh* himself *worst*; Since *those that think* themselves *good, are fuller of Pride, than of Piety. He* that *considereth his own past life, will find* that *he hath always been an offender*, since *he was capable of acting.*

2. *Who can say I have not disobeyed God* since *my Youth? Who would be guilty of* such *pride? Who dare speak* such *a bold word? The best of men sinneth every day; and what preventeth* that *God doth* not *punish the* same *moment* that *man offendeth?*

3. *I fear* that *those Children will become evil men*, that *have seen evil Examples of* Parents. *I fear* that *they will* not *have wisdom to shun their Parents Vices.*

50. *The* before any Comparative, is made by *quò*, and answered by *eo*.

51. *Till* before a Noun is made by *usque ad*, before a Verb with its Nominative Case by *donec*.

52. *Together* after words of time, is rendred by *per* set before the word of time. In Company, at the same time or place, by *simul*.

53. *So* for also, is rendred by *etiam*, before an Adjective or Adverb, by *nimis*, *nimium*.

54. *Very*

54. *Very* before an Adjective or Adverb, is only a ſign of the Superlative Degree, or may be made by *valde*; before a Subſtantive, by *merus*, e. g.

1. The *more learned a man is, he either is, or ought to be the more humble*; *he that is proud of his wiſdom, is indeed a* very *fool.*

2. *That is a* very *excellent Rule, which Chriſt our Saviour hath given us* to *obſerve*, viz. *Do* to *others, as thou wiſheſt they ſhould do* to *thee. Do not tarry till thou receiveſt a kindneſs from another man*; *only wait* till a *needful time, and then help him, though he be thine Enemy, and have continued* to *injure thee many years* together.

3. *It is not ſtrange if Friends live peaceably* together. *But it is a Chriſtian's duty to exerciſe amity towards his Enemy*; *not only to pray for his Benefactors, but for his Perſecutors* too, *Thou canſt not obſerve this Rule* too *diligently.*

55. *Whether* anſwered by *or*, is made by *ſeu ſive*; when it notes *which of the two*, by *uter.*

56. *Soever* is Latined by *cunque*, added to the foregoing word. (And between it and the word, to which it is added, may elegantly be inſerted another word.)

57. *Yet* anſwering to *although*, is made by *tamen*; nothing *hitherto*, or *as yet*, by *adhuc*, e. g.

1. *A true Chriſtian is happy*, whether *he liveth* or *dieth*; *when Life and Death are before him, he is never in doubt* whether *he ſhall chuſe. The Glory of God determineth the matter.*

2. *Not* whoſoever *profeſſeth himſelf Religious, but* whoſoever *is truly Religious, is lovely in the ſight of God.* Whereſoever *that man dwells, God is with him*; *though he dies, yet he ſhall live: God never yet forſook his Servants.*

58. An uſual error among Boys, is cauſed by the Ambiguity of thoſe words in the *Engliſh* Tongue, *viz. your* and *you.* Which in our *Idiom*, are properly enough uſed in ſpeaking either to one perſon, or to more than one; but muſt be Latined differently: The way therefore to avoid that miſtake, is only carefully to conſider whether one perſon be ſpoken to, or more; if the *Engliſh*

words *you, yours*, refer only to one, they must be rendred by *tu, tuus*; if two or more, by *vos, vester*.

59. If thou find an English of a Verb Passive, and considering the Latin word, find it to be the Deponent, tho that Deponent will sound like a Passive, yet it must not be used as a Passive, but the words somewhat altered, so as to keep the same sense, and yet make use of the Deponent, or *an*, in its stead, *e. g.*

1. *A wicked Man's greatness is soon forgotten, but the name of the righteous shall be remembred for ever.*

2. *The Holy Name of God is abused by those that call themselves his Servants, yet run greedily into all Debaucheries.*

3. *The devices of the wisest Men are frustrated by the wiser God.*

60. The signs of Cases are sometimes in English found by themselves, at a distance from their proper word; and in rendring such English, must be reduced into their right place, and not Latin words made for them separately, *e. g.*

1. *Good Instructions are as necessary as Food. Men honour those that they received good Advice from, in their tender years.*

2. *Counsel hath its effects according to the Man which it proceedeth from, and the mind of him that it is given to; but chiefly according to God's blessing.*

61. *One another* is made by *alius*, repeated twice according to the Gender of the Substantives; *one* with *the other*, answering to it in another part of the Sentence, is made by *alter & alter*, e. g.

Water and Ice beget one another: *The one* is *liquid*, the other *condensed*; The one *is ready for use*, the other *Servants melt over the Fire. But in coldness they resemble* one another.

One-another, may also be made by *invicem* an Adverb, with *se* a Pronoun. Let Boys render the former Examples both ways.

Larger

Larger Engliſh Exerciſes.

After the rendring Sentences, not only according to the Rules of the Grammar, *but alſo of Particles and other things obſervable, it will be time to proceed to continued Diſcourſes. And before the reading of Engliſh Dialogues, Epiſtles, or ſuch like Exerciſes, theſe few things may not be amiſs to be premiſed for Obſervation, in order to Boys acquitting themſelves the more commendably in that concern,* viz.

Obſ. 1. *Relative Sentences are independent,* i.e. *no word in a Relative Sentence is governed of a Verb or Adjective, which ſtands in another Sentence; nor doth a word in another Sentence depend upon any of the appurtenances of the Relative.*

Obſ. 2. *When a Pronoun of the third Perſon is the Antecedent to a Relative, that Pronoun Antecedent is rather to be underſtood, and only the Relative expreſſed; as,* he that, qui, *not* ille que; that which, quod, *not* illud quod.

Obſ. 3. *Verbs have many times ſome Particle or other, which comes after them, and is part of their ſignification; for which no Latin is made; only the Verb is to be taken notice of; and which Particle is ſometimes parted from its Verb by the interpoſure of ſome other words, as,* lay *burthens* upon, *to* rule *with rigour* over.

Obſ. 4. But *in the beginning of a Sentence, may be made by* Sed; *but rather by* autem, *or* verò, *placed the ſecond Word in the Sentence:* Autem *muſt never be the firſt Word, nor* verò.

Obſ. 5. Nam *is* Latin *for* for; *the firſt word of a Sentence; but if* enim *be uſed, it muſt be the ſecond Word, never the firſt.*

Obſ. 4. Non *(eſpecially) muſt ſtand before the Verb, and generally all Adverbs, though the* Engliſh *of them ſtand after the Verb; as I loved him not,* non amavi, *not* amavi non.

Obſ. 7. *Make not thoſe* Engliſh *by two diſtinct words in* Latin, *for which there may be found one, which fully expreſſeth it; as* how great? *not* quam magnus, *but* quantus; *how often? not* quam ſæpe, *but* quoties?

Obſ. 8. *In rendring* English *into* Latin, *make not raſhly this or that word to be of this or that Caſe, merely becauſe it hath ſuch a ſign before it (which is the occaſion of frequent Errors,) but ſee for ſome word foregoing, that governeth a Caſe by ſome Rule, and make it accordingly. For the* Engliſh *ſigns of Caſes,* to, of, *&c. are liable to multitude of Exceptions.*

Obſ. 9. *Never go about to render an* Engliſh *Sentence into* Latin, *before reading it warily over, from the beginning to the end; and if one reading ſuffice not for the thorough underſtanding of the ſenſe and conſtruction, have patience to read twice, thrice, or four times, as often as need require, till thou perfectly underſtand the connexion of each word one to another.*

Obſ. 10. *In almoſt every* Engliſh, *if but conſiſting of five or ſix Lines, thou wilt meet with, it may be, one or more Idiomatical Expreſſions, which will be bald, if rendred* verbatim. *In ſuch Sentences, uſe not the* Dictionary, *but either a* Phraſe-Book (*ſuch as* Willis's Anglicisms Latinized, Walker's Idioms, *or any other, which the Maſter ſhall have recommended to thee,*) *or* (*which would be the more commendable of the two*) *bethink thy ſelf of ſome apt Expreſſion, which thy ſelf haſt read, and which thou haſt been bidden to treaſure up, either in thy Memory, or a Note-Book. The Idioms of one Language cannot be tolerably rendred but by the Idioms of another.*

Obſ. 11. *When there is a Relative Sentence, or a* Parentheſis *in the* Engliſh, *read the reſt of the Sentence, from one* Period *to another, leaving that Relative Sentence, or* Parentheſis *out, then ſhalt thou clearly ſee the dependence of each word, and ſhalt thereby avoid much of that difficulty. And when thou haſt read it ſo, till thou underſtand it, then proceed to Tranſlation.*

Obſ. 12. *Though an artificial placing, and ordering of words, be not eſſential to the true tranſlating of a Sentence, yet it is* Ornamental. *Take heed therefore, that the words ſtand in ſome convenient and pleaſant order. Take notice therefore, That,*

1. *The*

1. *The Oblique Caſes ſtand moſt handſomely in the beginning of a Sentence, the Verb in the end, and the Nominative Caſe betwixt both.*

2. *The Subſtantive of the Genitive Caſe ſtands moſt elegantly before the Subſtantive that governs it.*

3. *The Adjective is more neatly ſet before the Subſtantive than after it.*

4. *Comparative and Superlative Adjectives, or Adverbs, ſtand moſt gracefully in the end of the Sentence.*

5. *If you have a Subſtantive and Adjective of the Genitive Caſe, the former Subſtantive governing, may elegantly come between them; as* Cæſareæ Clementia Majeſtatis.

6. *Between a Subſtantive and Adjective which are not of the Genitive Caſe, another Subſtantive of the Genitive; as* —Vera Juſtitia laus, humillima ſubditorum obedientia.

7. *A Pronoun Primitive comes elegantly between a Pronoun Poſſeſſive, and a Subſtantive that it agrees with; as* en offero meum tibi auxilium, tuum mihi conſilium expeto.

8. *The Vocative Caſe, the Verb* inquit *and* ait, *muſt not be ſet firſt, but ſecond, or third in a Sentence.*

9. *Longer words conclude a* Period *moſt ſweetly, i. e. of three or four Syllables.*

10. *Yet beware thou make not a Sentence ambiguous, hard to be underſtood, in over-ſtriving to place words artificially; for there is no elegancy in Ambiguity.*

11. *Many words that begin and end with Vowels, ſound unpleaſantly; they cauſe an* Hiatus, *too much gaping:* Magnæ avi iſti utilitas—ſummo oro obveni auxilio.

12. *Two words meet not handſomely together, whereof one ends with the ſame Conſonant with which the other begins; as* Puer rudis literarum. Ingens ſtrepitus. *Diſpoſe ſuch words otherwiſe, as* ſtrepitus ingens.

13. *Many words of the like ſound in the ending meet not gratefully; as* Multarum & magnarum miſeriarum origo eſt ambitio. *Avoid ſuch concurrence, by parting thoſe words, or uſing other words in their ſtead.*

Obſ. 13. *In ſeeking* Latin *words in the* Dictionary, *make uſe rather of the firſt or ſecond that you find, than of thoſe*

that follow. And refuse to make use of those which are very near the sound of the English; *as* Natio *for a* Nation, commendo *to* commend, salvatio *for* salvation, vexatio *for* vexation, *&c. unless there be no other; as* tentatio *for* temptation.

Obs. 14. *Sometimes the same* English *word may have divers Significations, and that in the same Discourse. In order to the right rendring of such Sentences, there is requisite treasuring up such words as they occur in Authors, or are taken notice of in correcting Exercises by the Master, that the several* Latin *words which answer to the several Significations, may not be used promiscuously; as* to marry, *hath four Significations;* Nuptum dare, *is* to marry, *when it is spoken of a Father marrying his Daughter to any Person, or giving in Marriage;* Matrimonio jungere, *to* marry, *spoken of the Priest marrying a Couple;* Uxorem ducere, *a Man marrying a Woman;* nubo *to* marry, *when it speaks of a Woman being married to a Man, or marrying a Man. And many words there be of like diversity, which must be carefully heeded.*

Dat Pater aut Mater nuptum, jungitque Sacerdos,
Uxorem duco, nubit at illa mihi.

Obs. 15. *Sometimes an* English *Verb of the third Person, is rendred by a* Latin *of the second; which is when in an Interrogative Sentence, the Nominative Case to the Verb, is a* man, *or* one, *then make no* Latin *for* man, *or* one, *only put the Verb into the second Person; as* Quid facias in hac re arctissima? *What should one do in such a perplexed business?* Quid dicis? *What can a Man say? How could one refrain?* Qui abstineres?

Having committed to Memory these few Notes, the following *Englishes* will not be difficult.

DIA-

DIALOGUE I.

The *Maſter* and the *Scholar.*

Maſt. BOY, you have always been dear to me, above the reſt of your School-fellows. *Sch.* I have great reaſon (honoured Sir) to believe that you love me: The daily care that you take in teaching me, not only thoſe things that belong to Learning, but alſo which conduce to Piety, is a witneſs of your Love, which I can no way recompence, but by hearty thanks, and willing obedience. *M.* Diligence in teaching is the beſt opportunity I have to evidence my Love. But the more I love thee, the more it grieves me, when I ſee thee more idle than other Boys, whom I make not ſo much account of. My love conſtrains me to be angry with thee, when thou neither ſtudieſt to pleaſe me, nor to profit thy ſelf. I find, that Learning is not pleaſant to thee, as it was formerly. *S.* Sir, I dare not deny that I am guilty; but I earneſtly intreat you, that you would forgive me. *M.* Pardon hurts thoſe Boys that are not of an ingenuous Spirit, and that ſtrive not to requite their Maſter's Clemency by better diligence. It is as eaſy to ſpoil Boys by forgiving, as by puniſhing. *S.* Believe me, Sir, but once, and if ever I offend hereafter, ſpare me not. *M.* Thou haſt often promiſed me amendment, but thou ſeldom art as good as thy word. *S.* I confeſs I have broken my Promiſe, but let your Mercy pardon that fault too; I am reſolved, Sir, to forſake all my idle Companions, to leave off my evil Cuſtom of playing; to ply my Books, and to become a new Boy, as if I were not the ſame that I have been. *M.* You deſign to do theſe things, while you are under fear of puniſhment; but when you have forgotten the fear, you will return to your former folly, at the bidding of the firſt naughty Boy. *S.* I will beg of God to give me power to perform what I promiſe, for without him we can do nothing; as I have heard from your Mouth. *M.* I like that word: Pray to God earneſtly,

and

and he will answer thee. I will pardon thee, but thou must strive with all thy might, as well as crave Divine help. *Sch.* I will, Sir, do both; I will both pray and strive, and I hope I shall not be unworthy of your Clemency; you shall not repent of your pardoning me. *Mast.* I shall love thee most dearly, (my dearest Boy) if thou consult thine own profit hereafter, and study diligently. And (which is more desirable) God shall bless thee, he shall increase thine understanding and wisdom; for he giveth wisdom as well as riches to the industrious.

DIALOGUE II.

Thomas and *Giles*.

T. WHY do you cry? What hath befallen you? *G.* I have offended God by disobeying my Parents, and I know not what will become of me: I am ashamed of my ingratitude. *T.* You are far more happy than they, that having committed a fault, deny that they are guilty; or if they confess it, they are not sorry for it, as thy Tears shew thee to be. *G.* I am indeed grievously guilty, and I am afraid God will not pardon me. *T.* God is indeed angry with stubborn Children; but if they beg pardon of God, he will forgive their sins, God delighteth to shew mercy; it pleaseth him to see Sinners repenting. *G.* I have been guilty of this fault many times, notwithstanding that I have promised my Father better Obedience. *T.* Be of good chear, I will intreat your Father to pardon you, and he will pray for you, that God also may be reconciled. *G.* My Father is a Man of most sweet temper; he was reconciled before I came from home, he was even ready to pardon before my repentance. *T.* I am glad of that. Beware thou displease him not for the future, that God may bless thee. If thou study to obey God and thy Parents, thou shalt be kind to thy self, thou shalt live comfortably, and enjoy Eternal Happiness. *G.* By the help of God, I will be obedient.

DIA-

DIALOGUE III.

Master and *Scholar.*

S. SIR, I intreat that you would be pleased to grant me one request. *M.* If my grant may profit thee, I will not deny; if thou ask those things which tend to thine own hurt, I must refuse. *S.* I only beg, Sir, that you would be pleased to repeat to me those Instructions that you gave to our Form yesterday. *M.* I like well thy asking such things. But thou knowest that I always admonish the whole School together, not one particular Form. Where wert thou, when I was admonishing? *S.* Sir, I was not at School yesterday in the Afternoon, because my elder Brother was then returned from *Italy*; my Father bid me stay to spend the Afternoon with my Brother. *M.* That indeed is a sufficient reason, if thou speak the truth. *S.* I dare not lie, Sir. *M.* Why didst not thou ask some of thy School-fellows rather than me? They certainly can remember those few Precepts which I gave them. *S.* The hearing them from your Mouth, Sir, will more affect my mind. *M.* I will grudge no labour, whereby I may benefit thee; I will tell thee, in short.——I told them how necessary it was, that besides Family-Prayer, and the Prayers which they are present at in the School, each Boy privately pray to God every Morning and Evening, with upright Heart, and religious Mind. So God shall bless him Night and Day. He that doth not begin and end the Day with committing himself to the Care of the Almighty God, seemeth to separate himself from God's Family, and is most unworthy of his Fatherly Protection.——I charge them all the Day to be dilgent at School, and obedient at Home. God revengeth Injuries offered to Parents; and shame recompenceth the sloathful.——I endeavoured to dissuade them from lies. Speak the truth at all times. It is not lawful for Boys to lie, to avoid danger or punishment, Rather suffer than sin. If thou be worthy

of

of Punishment, confess thy guilt ingenuously, lest after thou hast made thy Master angry, by committing, thou make God thine Enemy by denying. Lie not in Mirth: Jesting Lies bring serious Sorrows. He is a Fool that destroys his own Soul, to make others sport. I admonished them of the horrid Nature of Oaths; they are like Darts, that being shot out of the Mouth, rebound, and smite the Shooter's heart. Swear not by sacred Things, for they ought never to be mentioned, but for the confirmation of weighty Truths, before those that have power to demand of thee an Oath. He that feareth God, feareth an Oath. And lastly, I put them in mind of that Duty, which I have frequently admonished them of, to wit, that they be mannerly and observant towards Superiors, and courteous towards Equals.

I then minded them but of these few things; observe thou them also, that God and Man may love thee. *S.* I thank you, Honoured Sir, I will observe.

DIALOGUE IV.

William and *Bartholomew.*

W. WHither is this Man gone that killed his Mother? *B.* Is it possible to be imagined, that any Man should be so bloody? *W.* You know well enough whom I mean; *viz.* him that two Men pursued last Night. *B.* I heard some Men talk of a Murtherer, that was put in Prison; but I know not whether it be the same that you speak of, or another. *W.* I suppose then, that it is he; he is a very bloody Man, he killed his Mother, which is worse than Common Murtherers: He stampt upon her after he had wounded her; and after that barbarous Act, broke her Skull with an Hammer, which encreases his Guilt. *B.* The Murther, and the Circumstances which you speak of, are very Barbarous. Nor is it a false Report, that I have heard. But what moved him to do it? *W.* Men talk of many Causes, according to their various Suspicions, which I have not now

now time to tell: But the moſt probable report is, That he did it, that he might the ſooner enjoy the Money that ſhe had hoarded up for him. *B.* To what a paſs are things come! It is hard to be known what a Man any one is. I am ſure all things were given him that he had need of. But the Devil tempted him by deſire of Riches, than which nothing is more prevalent. He that is forſaken of the Grace of God, hearkeneth to Satan, and committeth all manner of Wickedneſs that Hell can deviſe. Pleaſures and Profits are the Devil's Snares, which Men are eaſily taken in. *W.* So haſty Heirs, that ſhorten their Parents Lives, ſhall have their Inheritance in Hell.

DIALOGUE V.

Mark and *Anthony.*

M. MY Father's Apprentice is fled from his Service, and hath taken away ſtore of Money with him, beſides my Father's Horſe, that he took out of the Stable; and many other things that uſed to be committed to his charge, as to a faithful Servant. He hath committed many things worthy of Puniſhment before this; but now he hath done more evil, than in all the reſt of his Life. *A.* As I remember, I have heard your Father commending him formerly. *M.* He hath been always accounted one of an excellent Nature. When he was a Boy, every body thought him a Child of great hope. And ſince his riper Years, moſt Men, that knew him, have thought him a Servant of moſt faithful Conſcience. *A.* He hath need of a great deal of Honeſty, that can behave himſelf honeſtly among ſo many Temptations, which lay wait for a young Man. If he had had help from God, which he had great need of, he had been ſafe from Satan's Temptations. *Pythagoras* the Philoſopher, was wont to liken young Men to Colts; and that compariſon was fit: For unleſs they be reſtrained with a Bridle, they ruſh headlong into their own Deſtruction. *M.* I was always afraid that he would be an unprofitable Servant,

Servant, and I was ſorry when my Father took him Apprentice. *A.* Did you not ſay, he was well thought of? *M.* I knew one thing of him, which made me doubt concerning him. He was my School-fellow, and was very idle and ſtubborn in School; he never had my Maſter's love. *A.* It is then no wonder, that he is now wicked. Thoſe that are Rebels in the School, are Knaves in the Shop, or Fools. A perverſe and idle School boy, ſeldom becomes a good Servant. He is wiſe, that being to chuſe an Apprentice, conſulteth the School-Maſter more than the Parents.

DIALOGUE VI.

Maſter and *Servant.*

M. WIlt thou ne'er become wholly good, *Harry*? *S.* You uſe to ſay, None is perfect, Sir. *M.* Doſt thou cavil at my words? I mean, Wilt thou never wholly lay aſide thy ſloth? *S.* I will endeavour, Sir, to pleaſe you always for the future. *M.* I wiſh I might believe thee; thou ſeemeſt ſometimes a Boy of moſt tender Spirit; but ſoon after, all hope of thee vaniſheth. Thou art like a Man that I have heard of, that never knew his own mind; if he had determined one thing one Moment, he changed his Reſolution in the next; his Thoughts were not his own. I never knew but two Boys like thee: *Thomas Fallacio* and *William Futurio*, two Neighbours Apprentices; the one (I think) is as bad, the other ſomewhat worſe than thy ſelf. I am ſorry thou ſhouldeſt give me cauſe to ſay ſo of thee. *S.* I repent (Sir) that I am one of that number; but I will firſt amend, that they may imitate me. *M.* Be as good as thy word; if thou be, as thou haſt a great while been called idle, thou ſhalt be hereafter eſteemed the beſt. All the Neighbourhood will commend thee. But I fear thou wilt ſleep to morrow Morning void of care. I wiſh God may give thee help to be more faithful. *S.* It is expedient for me to be induſtrious, Sir, and I will be. *M.* Thou

wilt

wilt reap the benefit of thine Industry, when thou comest to Man's Estate; the more careful and diligent thou art in my Business, the fitter thou wilt be for thine own; I exhort thee as well for thine advantage, as mine. *S.* I most readily believe you; I thank you, Sir, for your kind Admonitions.

DIALOGUE VII.

Master and *Scholar.*

M. TWo days ago thou desiredst of me a Repetition of some Instructions of mine; I now demand of thee, attention to a few more, which I would fain have fastned in thy mind: That thou mayst be ignorant of nothing that may tend to thy good. *M.* Most readily, (honoured Master) will I attend; for I firmly believe that you aim at my good. *M.* Thou mayst believe; but if not, I my self am assured, that out of a Conscientious Care for thee, I speak and act all things. And therefore together with the former, remember those Documents also.

1. Therefore be of a Catholick Spirit, love all the World; love thy Friends because they deserve it; love thine Enemies, because Christ commandeth. Requite not injuries with Injuries; but return Good for Evil. Abhor revenge; it was honourable sometimes among Heathens, but it is most uncomely for a Christian.

2. Think no Evil; when thou feelest evil Thoughts arising within thy mind, divert thy Meditation immediately to something of good. Contraries drive out one another.

3. Learn Good of every one; observe the Virtues of good Examples to imitate them; observe the Vices of bad Examples to avoid them.

4. If thou knowest thy School-fellow guilty of a Crime, admonish him privately, and tell me not of him, for I delight not in punishing; try if thou canst by thy Arguments reform him; thou shalt then do a blessed work;

work; but if he hearken not to thee, make me acquainted lest thy Friend be ruined. It is no part of Friendship to conceal deadly Vices; thou shalt merit his greatest Love by revealing them; and tho he, a wicked Boy, curse thee God shall bless thee. Yet I would by no means have thee be a Tell-Tale, or Common Accuser. Never discover but when there is necessity, and the safety of a Boy requires it.

5. Hope not for safety in Sin, because most Men go that way; Companions will not make the Flames of Hell the cooler; the more Fuel, the hotter the Flame will be.

6. Abuse not the Sabbath, nor imploy it either upon thy School-business; (for I had rather that were never done, than thou shalt lay out that day upon it,) or upon Recreations. It is the Lord's-day, not thine own; Worship God on that day; so shall he bless thee all the Week after. Those that work in God's time, shall lose their labour; and those that play in it, shall repent of their sport.

7. Never use the Name of God irreverently, he is a Jealous God. Be afraid to mention his Name without a Mental Adoration.

8. Jeer not others upon any occasion, if they be fools God (not themselves) denied them understanding; if they be Vicious, thou oughtest to pity them, not to revile them; if deformed, God framed their Bodies, and wilt thou scorn his Workmanship? Art thou wiser than the Creator? If poor, Poverty was designed for a Motive to Charity, not to Contempt; thou canst not see what Riches they have within; especially despise not thy aged Parents. If they be come to their second Childhood, and be not so wise as formerly, they are yet thy Parents, thy Duty is not diminished.

9. If Providence promote thee to Riches and Honour, be not Proud; God giveth thee those things for other ends; if thou abase them, he will take them away.

10. Take not any thing, that is thy Parents, without their leave; nothing is thine, till it be given thee. He that steals, is nevertheless a Thief, because he robs but his Father or Mother.

11. I

11. Be always content; Childrens Will is limited; murmur not againſt thy Parents, againſt thy Maſter, much leſs againſt God.

12. Never talk of thoſe things that concern thee not; be not a buſy-body.

Obſerve all theſe things moſt devoutly, the ſum of all which is *Obedience*; for that one word comprehendeth the whole Duty of a Child towards Parents, towards Maſter, and towards God; let that little word be engraven upon thine Heart; and if thou obſerve it, when thou art a Man thou wilt be uſeful in the Commonwealth, and Loyal to thy Prince.

S. You have given me, Sir, a Compendium of my Duty. I am by Nature more forward to Evil than to Good; How ſhall I conquer that Inclination? *M.* God can overcome all Difficulties; rely upon him, and he ſhall give thee ſtrength.

EPISTLE I.

SIR,

I Were ungrateful if I ſhould not return you the greateſt thanks for your readineſs to do me good. But Actions do not always ſucceed according to the deſign of the Agent. I am ſorry, I have cauſe to complain of the Servant you ſent me laſt Week; I am ſcarce at leiſure to write of what a bad Diſpoſition he is of. I will only mention ſome few of his Features; by them you may conjecture of the reſt. He is greedy after Victuals, but he is unwilling to work; he is ſottiſhly ignorant of all the Offices of a Servant. I never knew any Memory like his; he is forgetful of all my Commands; he ſometimes ſeems doubtful in mind, whether or no he ſhould preſently forſake mine Houſe, becauſe of the heavineſs of his Labour; he is guilty of all Vices, which make him unfit for Service. For my part, I think, he is the moſt ſtupid of all Blockheads. I have one young Man, that I keep, whom it hath pleaſed God to deprive of underſtanding, but I think this laſt Fellow is the more unprofitable

unprofitable to me of the two. Many Brute creatures are more docible than him by many degrees; he is not only void of all Good, but full of Wickedness and Vice, worthy of Stripes every hour, unworthy of Praise, yea even of Life; he is of kin to a Beast; he is fit for the work of a Beast, not of a Man. It is hard for me to express his Qualities; I have resolved to banish him from mine House, lest my other Servants should grow like him. Be pleased to pardon my tedious Lines about so ill a Subject, and not think that I accuse (Sir) your endeavours; you were ignorant (I without doubt perswade my self) of his Faults, for you wrote to me that you had heard him commended. I only blame mine own success: But as for you, I have never the less cause to assert my self,

Your obliged Servant, T. P.

EPISTLE II.

Honoured Father,

I Cannot but acknowledge that it is my part to write to you as often as I can; to leave other less necessary things, and to prefer my Duty to you before them. 'Tis the Duty of Children to please their Parents; and you have often told me how much you are pleased to receive Letters from me. Ungrateful I, that do not gladly embrace, and zealously answer the Love of so good a Father. 'Tis a Father's part to love; if I should say you had done your part, those words were too feeble to express your constant Affections; but I blush to think how justly you may blame me for Ingratitude in neglecting my Duty. You have been a Father, but I have not been a Son; I have the greatest reason to value your love at a great rate; but Boys that displease their Parents, like me, are not to be esteemed. Yet (Honoured Sir) after all this my Confession and Accusation of my self, let me beg, that you would please to take in good part this Letter as a Token of mine Obedience.

I have

have *gratis* all that I enjoy, yet I presume to offer my penny-corn as my acknowledgment, and oftner than once a year, because I am daily received. Condemn me not for my former neglect, though I deserve it; acquit me from my deserved Punishment. Mine own Thoughts accuse me of most hainous Crimes; for what is more hainous than Folly and Ingratitude? I must accuse my self of both; but I hope you cannot but pity me, and have compassion of mine Ignorance. I remember your former goodness, which pardoned great Crimes; and the remembrance thereof makes me now hope to obtain your favourable Pardon, which I again earnestly intreat: if I obtain that, this Letter hath done its Office; and none shall be more happy than (Sir,)

Your obedient Son, J. M.

EPISTLE III.

Dearest Brother,

I Have now been three Weeks in the Country; and Divine Providence hath made my Journey safe and prosperous. I have fully accomplished the business which I had to do for you; an account of which I know will be grateful to you; I will therefore send you a Letter about that business the next Week. At present I only acquaint you in general, That it is done, and add thereto the great kindness that I received of my former Master, when I went to see him at *York*; if I had done nothing else but visited him, I should have thought my Journey had profited me enough: The sight of him delighted me very much; he is certainly a most excellent Man; I know none that may be compared with him, he is a Man of so great Learning and Godliness. I do not love Comparisons; but I never found any Man that could equalize himself to him. One may compare him to *Plato* for his Temperance and Moderation. You will perhaps ask what he gave me, when I was at his House; but I went not to receive any thing of him; he gave

gave me some good Admonitions; a gift which pleased me better than Gold or Silver; and besides, he returned me a Book, which I left there last Year. He bad me at all times (when I have need) to ask Counsel of him; I promised him, I would obey his advice; if I should not please him, as far as I can, I were mine own Enemy, and ungrateful to him, having received so many kindnesses from him; I will love him, and honour him as long as I live. Dearest Brother, I could not but write these things to you; but having used boldness enough already, I will not try your Patience too much, lest you should complain (as you use to do) of the tediousness of the Letters you receive from

Your Affectionate Brother, B. J.

EPISTLE IV.

SIR,

YOur unwearied Questionings after many refusals, seem to intimate, that you think me unconstant; but I scorn such a Mind. That thing which you desire to know, was committed to me as a Secret by your Uncle; if to reveal it, would do you good, yet after I had promised him secrecy, your utmost diligence should never extort it from me; but to disclose this, would not help, but hurt you. Your advantage only was the Argument which perswaded your Uncle to command me secrecy: He charged me to tell no body. Should I now become a Tatler, he would never believe me more, and would have just reason to be angry with me. Leave urging me therefore, and never write to me about it any more. For know, I am of a more generous Spirit than to betray innocent Secrets. The more you attempt, the more unmoveable I shall be. Our Master (I remember) used to threaten us with his severest Anger if we searched into the Secrets of others. It is no less an Honour to any one not to ask, than to another to conceal. I prefer that Friend, that asketh little, before him, that would fain know every thing. It would be a praise

you, if you were content to be ignorant. Be pleased therefore to vindicate your own Honour, and to satisfy us by your future silence; for a thousand new Perſuaſions ſhall never extort that which it will do you no good to know, from

Your Friend, as far as I honourably may, E. C.

DIALOGUE VIII.

Maſter and *Boy*.

SIR, That Boy kickt me with his foot. *M.* What injury did you do to him? *B.* I did but touch him with my Glove. *M.* You may think you did not hurt him; but none can tell the effect of a blow, but he that feels it. *B.* He was not at all hurt by my blow; but he ſtruck me out of Malice, he kickt me with great earneſtneſs, he hath ſome old Grudge againſt me. *M.* If it be ſo, I will be very angry with him, for I hate Malice; it hath coſt me much labour to endeavour to promote love amongſt you, my Scholars; but I ſtrive in vain, for you often quarrel. *B.* He tore in pieces my Book laſt Week, which coſt *Two* Shillings; my Father bought it a Month ago for me at *Cambridge*. *M.* Why did he tear it? *B.* Becauſe I would not ſell it him for leſs than it coſt me; whereas I dare not ſell it at all; for you, Sir, have often commanded us to ſell nothing. The Book is very ſcarce, it is worth a Crown; my Father bought it cheap. *M.* This Age abounds in Wickedneſs; Boys are full of Folly, they want Wiſdom to oppoſe their own violent Paſſions; they know not how to uſe thoſe beginnings of reaſon, that they are endowed with. They conſider not the Torment of Paſſion: an angry Perſon enjoyeth no Peace, he changeth his own Reſt into Trouble, and paſſionate Boys create me much Vexation by their Quarrels; they deſerve very ill of me. *B.* I was not in fault (Sir) I was ſitting quietly, and doing my duty. *M.* I have heard of many, that you are as bad as the worſt. You are born of a paſſionate Father, and you will be like him. Me-

thinks

thinks you should be ashamed, that Boys whom you excel in Learning, should excel you in Virtue. I am doubtful in Mind what I shall do; I fear you are both guilty, and both to be punished, I will not suffer Boys to injure one another; I will search into the business; if I find you guilty, you shall be deprived of my Favour. You shall not be beaten by Boys, but you shall not abuse them. I will judge rightly as far as I can.

EPISTLE V.

Honoured Father,

I Have a great desire to see you, and mine other Friends; I have the greatest reason to Love and Honour you; and I cannot but desire your House more than School, tho I am very desirous to learn. Be pleased to grant me my desire this once, and to send a Letter to my Master, that he may send me to you. To speak the truth, I have a mind to live with another Master, or to come and live with you, that I may go to School in *Canterbury*, near you. My Master is such a severe Man, that I had far rather Plow than continue here. My Tasks are also so heavy, my Burthens so great, that I cannot undergo them. If you shall please to suffer me to come to you, I shall return you greatest thanks; it is hard to be expressed how much of my mind is at home. I will go to my Cousin, to fetch the Cloak which you lent him, and will bring it with me. (Honoured Sir) pardon my boldness in asking, and let me hear good News, which may rejoyce me. I will be willing to obey your pleasure in all things. I will be content either to live with you, or with my Uncle at *York*, or with any Friend of yours, whersoever you please: Only let me be removed hence, whereby you shall add one more to the innumerable Obligations wherewith you have already bound,

London, November 28. 1686.

Your obedient Son, S. H.

EPISTLE

EPISTLE VI.

Son,

I Have been formerly greatly rejoiced at receiving Letters from *London* from you; but that which came to me laſt week, was moſt unacceptable and troubleſom; I was grieved when I perceived in you the beginnings of Unconſtancy and Idleneſs; for all your Arguments are drawn from thoſe two *Topicks*, which my Authority ſhall confute. You ſeem to hope that your Father is like your ſelf, but how fooliſh is that Expectation? Know, that I not only reſolve never to gratify your unreaſonable Requeſt, nor to ſatisfy your fooliſh Mind; but if ſo learned, ſo virtuous, ſo diligent, and faithful a Maſter pleaſe you not, you ſhall be baniſhed from my ſight, I will ſend you (againſt your Will) to *France* or *Holland*, where I will find out for you the ſevereſt Maſter. If I believe your Maſter (whom I love and honour) were auſtere beyond reaſon and moderation, I would moſt readily deliver you from his Injuſtice; but I think quite otherwiſe of him: nor will I believe your Accuſations, much leſs will I hearken to the Complaints of the difficulty of your Tasks; all things are eaſy to Induſtry, all things difficult to Sloth, and your Maſter is more prudent than to command things impoſſible. When I came to *London* laſt year, I lived in your Maſter's Houſe a whole Month, I then heard no Complaints from you, you were content, and my ſelf alſo obſerved ſomething of his prudent Care, and excellent Wiſdom, in managing the School; and whence this new wearineſs proceeds, I cannot otherwiſe conjecture, than by thinking that you begin to be more idle than formerly; and inſtead of removing you, I ſhall moſt certainly requeſt of your Maſter, that he will nip the Weed before it increaſe to a greater ſtrength, and urge you the more cloſely to your ſtudy, not to ſlacken the Reins, but ſtreighten them; an excellent medicine for the Diſeaſe that you are ſick of. In ſhort (Son) I highly eſteem and approve of your preſent

Master, nor shall you be removed yet from his Care and Government, till I certainly know some intolerable Injustice, which I never expect to find. Nor shall I hearken to your Reports, nor for them the sooner slight or suspect him. Resolve therefore to study diligently without wearineſs, to please him without grudging, to obey him most willingly, to love and honour him continually, so shall you reconcile him, whom your Complaints have angred.

Your careful Father, W. H.

DIALOGUE IX.

Lawrence and *Edward*.

L. I Cannot but acknowledge thee to be far more learned than my self, let me therefore have the benefit of thy help to inform my Ignorance. I will love thee, if thou wilt communicate. *E.* It is not in my power to cure thy Defects, nor to give thee Understanding, God only can give Wisdom. *L.* It is true, but God useth means to bring to pass his purposes, thou may'st help me, and I question not but my Father will recompence thy love. *E.* I will do as much as I can freely. In what dost thou want mine assistance? *L.* In translating *English* into *Latin*. I observed that thy Exercises are every day commended, and our Master propounded thy care for our imitation; let me hear by what means it comes to pass that thy Exercises are so commendable. *E.* I should be glad if all my Schoolfellows pleased my Master every day, that they might advance in Learning, and he might rejoice in their benefit. I will conceal nothing from thee. I always take notice of all the Phrases, or neat Expressions which I find in Authors; I write them down, and have now a great treasure of them, so that I have almost one in readiness for every occasion, and the most of them I have committed to memory.— Every great mistake, which I am guilty of, I write down in a Book, which I read over once a Week, that I may not commit the same Error twice.——When our Master is correcting our Exer-

Exercises, I always attend most diligently: I fix mine eyes upon him, and my mind upon his words.---If any other Boy have a better Phrase, or manner of expressing, than I, I certainly take care to remember it. —If the Exercises of any other Form be corrected, when my Task is done, I attend to that which seemeth not to belong to me; I think it concerns me to listen to every thing, that I may get good by.——Having furnished my self by these methods, and prepared my understanding, I set about my Exercise, which I always read over, before I begin to translate it, as our Master hath most wisely commanded.——I never write down any Word or Phrase, before a certain knowledge, or acurate enquiry, whether it be fit for my purpose. If I at all doubt, I never rest till I be certain. If I cannot find out what I seek, I ask the next day; I scorn not to learn of the meanest Boy; much less do I neglect to ask our Master, if no body else know. I never slightly pass over any difficulty; the more pains I take at one time, the less labour shall I need the next Exercise. I always appoint my self a certain measure of time for my Exercise, a moment of which I never bestow upon any other business; I never cease till I have done; I interrupt not my self, nor suffer the dearest Friend to interrupt me; my Supper, and my sleep always give place to business. Most Boys are easily diverted, which utterly hindereth acuracy.——I read over each *Latin* Sentence by it self, (after I have made it) twice or thrice; and at last the whole Exercise again and again deliberately, to observe any Errors which I have committed, which I correct my self, before the Master overlook it ——And lastly, I never am hasty, but allow time enough to each Word and Sentence. Many Boys bring always bad Exercises, for want of patient consideration.——I have now answered thy Question, and told thee the chief things which I observe. *L.* I heartily thank thee; I will imitate thee for the future.

DIALOGUE X.

Thomas and *John*.

Thom. I Was told that your Brother had displeased his Master, and therefore was not only chidden, but beaten. *John.* That Boy is worthy of a whipping that told you; for though I have no desire to accuse any one for a Fault before my Master, yet it is not fit that Punishments that any one suffers in the School, should be published openly. *Thom.* You are to be commended who are careful to observe the Laws of the School; but do not ask me the Boy's Name that told me this thing, for indeed he was afraid lest any of his Schoolfellows should hear of it. But I also understand, that you excel many other Boys in writing, which I am glad to hear. *John.* I must not tarry now, for I am to buy some Books that I have need of. *Farewel.*

DIALOGUE XI.

Thomas and *Richard*.

Thom. IF I am not deceived, I saw your Brother weeping when I called you. *Rich.* Both my Brother and Sister wept, and they had cause to weep, for my Father was angry with them. *Thom.* What Fault had they committed? I know that they are of a good disposition, and therefore surely they would endeavour to please your Father, and therefore it is not good to enquire into other mens business; yet tell me their Fault if you please. *Rich.* My Father was about to take a Journey to receive some money, which a Country-man, my Father's Tenant, owed him, but he wanted a Saddle, and therefore sent my Brother and Sister to buy him one. They went, but tarried so long, that at last he would not go. This was the cause of my Father's anger; for they tarried talking with our Neighbour's Daughter, whose Company they loved. *Tho.* They did ill.

DIA-

DIALOGUE XII.

Henry and *Robert.*

Hen. HOW can you expect God's Bleſſing, who do not ſtudy to pleaſe your Father? *Rob.* You always take liberty to accuſe me for my Faults: I have had Chiding enough at home to day, I did not expect to be chidden abroad alſo. *Hen.* Doſt not thou fear the puniſhment, that God the Juſt Judge, whoſe Eyes behold all mens Actions, hath threatned againſt ſuch Children as do not obey their Parents? I wonder that you are not aſhamed of your wickedneſs, by which you break the Laws both of God and Nature; and believe me, if you do not amend your manners, you will repent of your Folly, when it is too late; what if your Parents, whom you are ſo diſobedient to, ſhould caſt you off? Remember my word, which I ſpake not out of hatred to you; for I pity you, Reform your life, and then both your Father and you will have opportunity to rejoice.

DIALOGUE XIII.

Thomas and *Francis.*

Thom. HOW do you, my good Friend *Francis*? *Fran.* I am heartily glad that you are in health; my Brother *Richard* deſired me to remember his love to you. *Tho.* I thank both him and you. *Fran.* How much did that Book coſt you, that you have in your left hand? *Tho.* It is a Book, than which I never ſaw any more handſomely bound, and yet it coſt me but a little; for he that ſold it me, did not underſtand the Book's worth. *Fran.* Did a Bookſeller ſell it you? *Tho.* No, I bought it of one that found that and another Book in the ſtreet. *Fran.* I pity him that loſt them; it may be he hath ſorrow enough; it is probable that it was ſome careleſs Boy, whoſe Parents have been ſufficiently angry with him, yea, it may be he hath been beaten ſoundly. But thus we ſee it often, that one's loſs is another's gain; but I muſt not tarry now, leſt I loſe the opportunity to ſend this Letter, *Farewel.*

DIALOGUE XIV.

Joseph and *Philip*.

Jos. I Have brought you the Book that I borrowed, when you and I were at *London* together, and I intend to buy me such a Book, for it hath taught me much wisdom. Doubtless its Author was a man of great Piety as well as Learning. Some Books are scarce worthy of reading, but others deserve to be read an hundred times. How much did the Book cost you? *Phil.* It cost me Five shillings, and I do not think it dear: For it is a Book, than which I never read any more Learned and Pious, yea, every Leaf thereof is a Honey-comb full of most sweet Honey, drawn from the best of Flowers. I bought it over against the *Exchange*, at the Sign of the *Blackamoor's-head*, of a Bookseller who never useth to deceive me. *Jos.* It is the same Bookseller that I use to buy Books of; he will not offer his Books at a greater price than others; and for the most part his Books are most neatly bound. *Farewell.*

DIALOGUE XV.

Thomas and *John*.

Th. I Saw the man that your Father sold his Horse to, walking in the Street. *John.* Which Street? For my Father would be glad to see him; my Father hath need of money, and the man that you speak of owes him Fifty pounds (if I am not mistaken) which he hath often promised to pay, but hitherto he hath deceived him. *Th.* Then he is like a man that came to see my Father, intreating him to lend him Three shillings, promising to return it in an hour; but Summer will be colder than Winter, and Winter will become Summer, e're the money will be paid. *John.* It is very likely now adays. It is not good to trust a man we know not. The care of some is to get opportunities to cheat their Neighbours.

bours. They ſtudy only to pleaſe themſelves, though t[illegible] wrong others: but to obey God the higheſt Judge of a[ll] is better than to enjoy the Riches of this World, if God be angry with us. But we muſt uſe wiſdom, (which many want) that we neither hurt others, nor be hurt by others. *Farewell.*

DIALOGUE XVI.

Richard and *Thomas.*

Rich. I Am aſham'd of my Fault yeſterday, who was ſo angry with you, when you and I were at play together, and I earneſtly deſire you to pardon me, and not take it unkindly. I muſt confeſs my Fault, and I deſire hereafter to refrain from immoderate anger. *Th.* It is the part of a Chriſtian to confeſs the Faults which he offends God and man by. We have need of God's grace, that we may become more wiſe, and reſiſt the Devil's Temptations which he beguiles men by. For as the Fiſher hides the deadly Hook with ſome pleaſant Bait, which the fooliſh Fiſh greedily catcheth at and is taken: So the Devil promiſeth us pleaſure and profit if we will obey him, whom if we believe, we ſhall repent of our Folly; and happy are they whom God doth give effectual grace to, who ſeeing the evil of Sin, and the World's vanity, do apply their minds to Holineſs, without which *no man ſhall ſee the Lord.* *Rich.* It is good, when we are not ignorant of the Snares of the Devil, that Enemy of God and man. The Lord make us like Chriſt our bleſſed Saviour.

DIALOGUE XVII.

William and *Robert.*

Will. YOU were miſt at School Yeſterday. *Rob.* I believe you; My Father and Mother had occaſion to keep me at home, which I ſuppoſe they will

vil signify to my Master the occasion: being you are my friend, I will tell you: my Brother and Sister being to go into the Country, namely to *Ipswich*, my Father and Mother were desirous to accompany them about three miles, or a little more; and therefore I tarried to look to the Shop, for so they commanded me. This was the cause of my absence, which I doubt not will satisfy my Master. *Will.* Can you sell the Wares in the Shop, when your Father and Mother are absent? *Rob.* When a Customer comes to ask me for any Commodity, I can shew it him; for I know where each Commodity is placed, for each Box hath the Name for what is in it written upon the outside thereof, and they are dispos'd so Alphabetically, that every thing is very easy to be found. And as for the Price, all the Commodities have a private mark, which no body knows but we, who have been taught it by my Father: That mark shews the lowest Price that can be taken; If I can sell it for more, I do; but if not, I do not turn them away. How much money do you think I took while my Father was absent? *Will.* Ten shillings it may be. *Rob.* About Thirty shillings. One came and askt me for a pair of Gloves, which when he had fitted himself with, he demanded the price, (now the price signified by the mark was Two Shillings) I told him I would sell them for Half a Crown; but, at last, when I had abated him Two pence of what I askt him, he paid me the money. *Will.* You are a cunning Youth; but my business calls me away. Farewel at present.

DIALOGUE XVIII.

Henry and *Anthony*.

Hen. WHence come you, *Anthony*? *Anth.* I am come from *York* lately, but just now I came from *Dover*. *Hen.* And whither are you going? *Anth.* I was at *Paris* last year, and I am going to visit a Friend that was kind to me when I was there, *Hen.* It is well done

done of you to acknowledge Courteſies received, which is the part of a Chriſtian even above others; for if we muſt love our Enemies, and do good to them that hate us, (which Chriſt our Bleſſed Saviour commanded us) much more ought we to think that it concerns us to be mindful of our Friend's love. We ought not to grieve Strangers, much leſs thoſe that we are obliged to. Some are commended in Scripture, which entertained Strangers, and thereby entertain'd Angels unawares. But what buſineſs had you at *Paris*? Did you go to learn the *French* Tongue, or to ſee remote Countries? *Anth.* Neither of theſe was the end of my going. But my Father having ſome Wares that he could not ſell at *London* for ſo much as he underſtood he might ſell them for at *Paris*, he ſent me thither to ſell them. *Hen.* Then you are become a Merchant. *Anth.* I had no cauſe to repent of my Journey, nor my Father neither, for I had Pleaſure enough, and my Father Gain enough. *Hen.* Did you go alone? *Anth.* No, I had the company of a young man, a Neighbour of ours, both going and coming back. *Hen.* The better one's company is, the more pleaſant is the Journey. I ſhould like Travelling very well, having good Companions, and a full Purſe: But Farewell, we had Diſcourſe enough for the preſent. *Anth.* Farewell.

DIALOGUE XIX.

Thomas and *Mary*.

Tho. HOW do you, dear Siſter *Mary*? *Mary.* I have been ſick in the Country theſe three Weeks, and therefore I have cauſe to accuſe you for unkindneſs, who never came to ſee me in my Sickneſs; yea, I ſent you a Letter, and yet you did not return me an anſwer. Believe me, I have been very angry with you, and I think there is no body that will ſay, but that I have cauſe to be angry. *Tho.* I have not been unmindful of you; yet I heard not of your Sickneſs, but

bout the end of the laſt Week; and yet it grieved me much that I could not get an opportunity to viſit you, who have always been ſo dear to me; I may truly ſay, the moſt dear of all my Brothers and Siſters. The Letter which you ſpeak of, I never received; but God be praiſed that you now enjoy your health. I hope you will not be ſo unkind, that you ſhould think that I did not care for you. I long'd to ſee you, but I wanted an opportunity: I enquired every day of you, and I felt ſorrow enough in my heart, when I was told how dangerouſly you were ſick. *Mary*. Speak no further of this matter, my Siſter told me laſt night how much buſineſs you had which hindred your coming; and this I muſt confeſs, that as you have always obeyed my Mother, ſo you have been formerly more loving to me than the reſt of my Brethren. The more loving you have been formerly, the more I wondered at your abſence. *Farewell.*

DIALOGUE XX.

Franc is and *George.*

Fran. I Could not chuſe but laugh to ſee how blank our Schoolfellow *Robert* lookt, when he was ſo ſtrangely diſappointed of his expectation. *Geo.* I know not what you mean; but firſt let me anſwer you in general. Do you think it a Chriſtian like part to laugh at others miſchances? I am ſure that the Chriſtian Religion teaches us no ſuch thing; but on the contrary, we are commanded to weep when others are afflicted, and to rejoice if any good thing befals them. O what a ſweet lovely Carriage and Behaviour are we taught in that Book of Books, the Holy Scriptures! But alas! where is the Boy that minds thoſe Holy Inſtructions? Nay, ſome of us are come to that paſs of Folly, that they think God's Word doth not concern Boys, as if Boys might live as they liſt, and take their ſwinge according to their own will. *Fran.* Far be it from me to think ſo. But as to what you ſaid before concerning grieving, when

any

any miſchance befals another, it is true, we ought ſo to do; but yet I think it is to be meant concerning any great miſchance that is an Affliction indeed; not of a miſchance in a light, trivial, inconſiderable matter. And beſides, I think it hath been obſerved, that ſome have laughed at the Jeſt, that hath been accompanied with a miſchance, when really they have been ſorry for the miſchance it ſelf, and have truly pitied him on whom it fell; and it is hard to be affirmed that ſuch do Evil. *Geo.* I am ſatisfied by your diſcreet and moderate Anſwer. To return then, Pray let me know what manner of diſappointment befel *Robert*? *Fran.* He came of his own accord to my Maſter, and told him a Story of what paſſed between him and his Brother, expecting to receive Commendation; but when my Maſter had ſifted the buſineſs thorowly, poor *Robert* had like to have been whipt; but by his Brother's intreaty he eſcaped; But I am call'd away. *Farewell.*

DIALOGUE XXI.

Thomas and *William.*

Tho. IF it were worth while, we would go and enquire the Reaſon why our Schoolfellow, the Glover's Son, tarries from School; he is not uſe to play Truant, neither do his Parents uſe to keep him from School, and therefore it is to be fear'd ſome Evil hath befallen him. *Will.* As I was paſſing by his Father's houſe, his Mother ſtanding at the door, call'd me, and told me, that her Son had like to have kill'd himſelf with eating green and unripe Gooſeberries. *Tho.* Many are ſo unwiſe that ſo their Palates may enjoy a little preſent pleaſure, they care not how dear they pay for it afterwards: Few conſider how much it concerns them to take care of their health. *Will.* My maſter hath told us, that it is an obedience which we owe to God, to ſtudy how the health of our Bodies may be maintained; and that it is contained under the Sixth Com-

Commandment of the Decalogue, and that it is a degree of murther to do any thing that may prejudice our own, or others Health; and that of all murthers, Self-murther is the worst: We are not our own, and therefore we must give an account to him whose we are, for any wrong we do to our selves. *Tho.* What Account then have many to give, who by Drunkenness, and other Vices, do bring Diseases upon themselves, and very often shorten their Lives? We ought in the first and principal place to mind that welfare of our Immortal Souls, and in the next place our Bodies; and indeed the Proverb is true, which says, *That every Man is a Fool, or a Physitian to him, self*: But I am very sorry for our Schoolfellow's sickness and especially, that it came by his own Fault. Have his Parents hope of his Recovery? *Will.* He is much better than he was, but yet I suppose he will not be able to come to School this Fortnight. *Tho.* How much pains hath he suffered for a little pleasure? But so it is, we often buy our pleasure too dear by much. If we would obey God our heavenly Father, we should be happy both in this World, and to Eternity. I hope this sickness will teach him wisdom; for God hath promised his Servants, That Affliction shall make for their profit; and though we must not chuse Affliction, yet we ought to be content with all the dealings of God with us; for whom he loveth, he chastiseth; and they that are without Affliction, which all are partakers of, are Bastards, and not Sons. We have deserved God's everlasting wrath, and therefore we must not murmur, though God afflicts us; if God spare us for ever, I mean, if we shall be admitted to the eternal enjoyment of God, no matter how it fares with us in this life. It is better with *Lazarus*, to beg our bread from door to door here, than with *Dives*, to beg water in Hell. *Farewell.*

An EPISTLE.

Friend,

IT is my hard hap to have ever and anon ſome Fault to charge you with, ſo that I am forc'd to fill my Letters with Gall, which is no leſs unpleaſing to my ſelf than to you; but if my Letters are for the moſt part reprehenſory, you may thank your ſelf for it, not me. Do you look I ſhould ſtroke you on the head and praiſe you, who deſerve the utmoſt Severity, and the moſt tart Reproof? The truth is, you deſerve to be ſchooled, and ratled up ſoundly, who did ſend a Letter to your aged Father, that did grieve him beyond meaſure. I was at his houſe when your Letter was brought. At firſt he was ſo over-joy'd at the receipt of your Letter, that he ſcarce knew on what ground he ſtood; but when he had opened and read it, how ſoon was his joy turn'd into ſorrow? What lamentations and complaints did the poor old man utter? It made my heart ake to hear him bewail his misfortune. Then it was he began to be weary of his life. All the skill I had, was too little to pacify him; notwithſtanding all I could ſay, he had like to have fallen into a Swoon. At laſt, he gave me the Letter to read, and my very hair, I think, ſtood an end, through wonder and amazement at your undutifulneſs. What (thought I) is all the old man's coſt and pains come to this? Doth ſo good Education produce ſo bad Effects? Is this he whom all men reckoned ſo hopeful? To be ſhort, I made a hard ſhift to put a good face on it, leſt I ſhould increaſe your Father's ſorrow; but I ſaw he was not to blame for the ſorrow and grief that he expreſſed. Now except your heart is harder than any Flint, if you have any ſpark of good nature, or the fear of God left, repent of this folly and madneſs, and mitigate his ſorrow with yours. Amend your life, leſt you be the cauſe of his death, who was the cauſe of your life. *Farewel.*

DIA-

DIALOGUE XXII.

Thomas and *Francis*.

Tho. WHAT are you and your Brother a doing? *Fran.* My Brother was a going to write, but I had a mind to play, only I wanted a Companion whom to play withal; for part of our Schoolfellows are gone to wash themselves, which my Father and Mother have oft forbidden us on pain of whipping; and part of them are gone to fight, which is much worse. *Tho.* I have cause to praise you both, who are so desirous to please your Father and Mother; for no doubt the more care you have to obey them, the more will God bless you; but yet I see, that you are more negligent than your Brother, whose only care is to get Learning. And indeed they say, that he is the most diligent of all the Scholars your Master hath, which I now believe to be true. To have so much honour, as I perceive he hath gotten by his diligence, is very rare to be found in Boys; and indeed, when I heard some Neighbours of mine, men both honest and of good repute, so highly extolling him for his diligence, I began to be ashamed of mine own Errors, who thought that none was a better husband of time than my self; it is not lawful for me, I know, to envy any one; but yet to imitate is commendable. Threatnings are the only Spur to the backward and negligent; but those that are of a noble Disposition, have need rather of a Bridle than such a Spur. A company of Boys may be taught by the same Master the same Lesson, and yet one would hardly think how much some shall come on beyond the rest. *Fran.* My Brother is to go (if my Father's mind hold) to a place beyond Sea, which they call an University; but the proper Name of it I have forgot. *Tho.* If he goes thither, Books will be very necessary for him; your Father, I believe, sees him desirous of nothing but Learning, and therefore he will not deny

him

him Books; and if his Learning coſt your Father much, (as certainly it will an hundred pound at leaſt) yet he will never repent of it; for he will hereafter be mindful of his great coſt, and if he lives to be old, (but which of us two, or whether either of us, or both of us ſhall ſee that day, is uncertain) there will be few in *England*, no nor at *Rome*, more eminent for Learning than he. *Fran.* I have an Uncle, whom I hope my Brother will be like, whoſe Learning hath been profitable to himſelf, and made him admired by all that know him, who I know would be angry with my Father, if he ſhould oppoſe my Brother's deſires to obtain Learning; he hath promiſed him ſome Books, yea, and money too. *Tho.* To what Study doth your Uncle apply himſelf chiefly? *Fran.* Divinity. *Tho* In what City doth he live? *Fran.* At *York*, but he is ſhortly to come to *London*; Reaſon is common to all, but few enjoy Learning. Some ſeem born to Slavery, others to Honour: Though his Writing is ſcarce legible by any, yet he hath made a Book almoſt two Foot long, and three Inches thick, a Work ſo full of Learning, that moſt admire it. Indeed it coſt him many years ſtudy; many learned men have thought it worthy of publick commendation. *Tho.* It is the part of a wiſe man to ask counſel of ſuch an one. *Fran.* He counſels us, and commands us, as if he were our own Father. *Tho.* If you ſhould not give him Reverence, I ſhould accuſe you either of Folly or Ingratitude, or both. *Fran.* I believe you indeed. You may compare me to a Fool, and I ſhall take it in good part, if I do not always prefer his Commands before mine own Pleaſure. I pity ſuch as indulge their own Luſts, which will not profit but hurt them. It concerns us and all wiſe men to value thoſe things but little, which will not be a comfort to them when old Age comes on. I have had experience enough (which teacheth Fools the beſt Leſſons) to know that Repentance is not to be bought at ſo dear a rate as many buy it now adays. Pleaſure meets us with a ſmiling Face, but it behoves us to think on the Sorrow that follows,

lows. Many that are ſprung from good Parents, do abuſe their Nobility to the leſſening of their Crimes; yea, others (which is hard to be believed) have ſpent their Eſtates in a Year by Vice, which their Anceſtors have ſcarce gotten in Forty Years. But I muſt tarry long, it doth not ſo much belong to me to make a ſhew of Virtue, in reproving others Faults; neither do many words become me; and indeed being weary of diſcourſe, I muſt leave off talk. *Tho.* I am moſt deſirous of your Brother's happineſs, but I cannot have while to tarry; I muſt go to a place which is almoſt a mile off, to ſee a man that lives in the Country, but lately come from *York*, he lodges beyond St. *Paul*; he took away a Knife from my Siſter, though I think ignorantly; but behold a man yonder that hath red hair, I think it is he. Farewel, live a godly life, improve your time like your Brother, and remember me to him.

FINIS.

THE INDEX.

A

To abhor, *Abominor, aris, atus.* 1 d.
To abide, *Maneo, es. si.* 2 n.
Ability, *Vires.* 3 pl. f.
To be able, *Possum, es, tui.* n. irr.
Abominable, *Vilis, e.* adj. 3 art.
To abominate, *Abominor, aris, atus.* 1 d.
An Abomination, *Abominatio, nis.* 3 f.
To abound, *Abundo, as, avi.* 1 n.
About, *Circum.* prep. acc.
Abraham, *Abrahamus, i.* 2 m.
To abstain, *Abstineo, es, ui* 2. n.
Abstinence, *Abstinentia, æ.* 1 f.
Abundance, *Copia, æ.* 1 f.
Abundant, *Abundans, antis.* part. 3. art.
Accuracy, *Cura, æ.* 1 f.
To abuse, *Abutor, eris, re, usus.* 3 ad.
An Abyss, *Abyssus, i.* 2 f.
Acceptable, *Gratus, a, um.* adj.
To accommodate, *Accommodo, as, avi.* a, 1 c.
According to, *Secundum.* prep. acc.
An Acorn, *Glans, dis.* 3 f.
An Account, *Ratio, onis.* 3 f.
To account, *Habeo, es, ui.* 2 act.
To account or value, *Æstimo, as, avi,* a. 1 con.
To acquire, *Acquiro, is, sivi.* 3 a.
To acknowledge, *Agnosco, is, ovi.* 3 act.
To accuse, *Criminor, aris, atus.* 1 d.
An Accusation, *Accusatio, onis.* 3 f.
Accustomed, *Assuetus, a, um.* adj. bon.
Achaia, *a.* 1 f.
To act, *Ago, is, egi.* 3 act.
An act, *Actus, us.* 4 m.
An Action, *Factum, i.* 2 n.
To add, *Addo, is, didi.* 3 act.
To adjudge, *Adjudico, as, avi.* 1 act.
To admire, *Honoro, as, avi.* 1 con.
To admire, *Miror, aris, atus.* d. 1 con.
To admit, *Intromitto, is, misi.* 3 a.
To admonish, *Moneo, es, ui.* 2 act.
Admonition, *Monitum, i.* 2 n.
To adorn, *Orno, as, avi.* 1 a.
To advance, *Adaugeo, es, auxi.* 2 a.
Advantage, *Commodum, i.* 2 n.
An Adversary, *Adversarius, ii.* 2 m.
Adversity, *Res adversæ, rei.* 5 f.
Advice, *Consilium, ii.* 2 n.

To adviſe, *Conſulo, is, ui.* 3 a.
Affairs, *Res, ei.* 5 f.
Affection, *Affectus, ûs.* 4 m.
Afflictions, *Adverſæ res.* 5 f.
Afflicted, *Afflictus, a, um.* par.
To afford, *Præbeo, es, ui,* 2 c.
To be afraid, *Timeo, es, ui.* 2 a.
After, *Poſt.* præp. ac.
Afterwards, *Poſtea.* adv.
Againſt, *Contra.* præp. ac.
Age, *Ætas, atis.* 3 f.
To agree *Conſentio, is, ſi,* n. 30.
It agreeth, *Competit.* imp.
An Alehouſe, *Caupona, æ.* 1 f.
Alexander, *dri.* 2 m.
All with a Subſt. ſing. *Totus, a, um, ius.*
All with a Subſt. pl. *Omnis, e.* adj. 3 art.
All kind of ſorts of, *Omnigenus, a, um.* 3 t.
To allure, *Allicio, is, lexi, & licui.* 3 a.
Almighty, *Omnipotens, tis.* 3 art
Almoſt, *Pæne.* præp. ac.
Alone, *Solus, a, um, ius.*
Alſo, *Etiam.* conj.
To alter, *Commuto, as, avi.* 1 a.
Although, *Quamvis,* conj.
Altogether, *Prorſus.* adv.
Alphabetically, *alphabeticè,* ad
Always, *Semper,* adv.
An Ambaſſador, *Legatus, i* 2 m
Ambition, *Ambitio, onis.* 3 f.
Amazement, *admiratio, onis.* 3 f
Ambitious, *Ambitioſus, ſa, um,* adj. b.
To amend, *Emendo, as, avi.* a.
Amendment, *Emendatio, onis,* 3 f.
Among } *Inter,* præp. ac.
Amongſt }
Amſterdam, *Amſtelodamum, i,* 2 n.
Anceſtors, *Majores, rum,* 3 plu. m
And, *et.* conj.
An Angel, *Angelus, i.* 2 m.
Anger, *Ira, æ.* 1 f.
Angry, *Iracundus, a, um.* adj. b.
To be angry with, *Iraſcor, eris, atus.* 3 d.
Another, *Alius, a, ud,* alius. adj. n.
Another mans, *Alienus, a, um.* adj. b.
To anſwer, *Reſpondeo, es, di.* 2 n
To relieve, *Succurro, is,* 3 n.
An Ant, *Formica, æ.* 1 f.
Antony, *Antonius, ii* 2 m.
Any, *Quivis, avis.* pron.
Any one, *Aliquis, qua, quod.* pron.
Any thing that, *Quodcunque.*
Apace, *Velociter,* adv.
Apelles, *is.* 3 m.
An Apple, *Pomum,* } 2 n.
Appetite, *Appetitus, us.* 4 m.
Apollo, *inis.* 3 m.
Apoplexy, *Apoplexia, æ.* 1 f.
To appear, *Apparco, es, ui.* 2 n.
Appearance, *Species, ei.* 5 f.
To appeaſe, *Paco, as, avi.* 1 a.
To apply to, *Incumbo, is, ui.* 3 a.
To apply, *Adhibeo, es, ui.* 3 a.
To appoint, *Statuo, is, ui.* 3 a.

To

To appoint, *jubeo, es, jussi.* 2 a.
Appointed, *Destinatus, a, um.* part. b.
An apprentice, *Servus,* 1 2 m.
To approach, *Appropinquo, as, avi.* 1 n.
Araxis, *is.* 3 m.
To arise, *Surgo, is, exi.* 3 n.
Aristides, *is,* 3 m.
An Argument, *Argumentum, i.* 2 n.
An Arm, *Brachium, ii.* 2 n.
Armed *Armatus, a, um.* adj. bon.
Armour, *Armatura, æ.* 1 f
An Army, *Exercitus, us.* 4 m.
To arrive, *Pervenio, is, ni.* 4 n.
Art, *Ars, tis,* 3 f.
Artificial, *Technicus, a, um.* adj. b.
Artist, *Artifex, icis.* 3 m.
As if, *Quasi.* conj.
As to, *Erga.* præp. ac.
As well as, *Equè, æ.* conj.
As well as may be, *optimè* adv
To ascend, *Ascendo, is, di.* 3 n.
To be asham'd, *pudeo, es, ui.* 2 n
Ashes, *Cines, eris.* 3 m.
To ask, *Peto, is, ii.* 3 a.
An Ass, *Asinus, i.* 2 m.
To assist, *Opitulor, aris, atus.* 1 d.
Assistance, *Adjumentum, i.* 2 n.
To assign, *Assigno, as, avi.* 1 c.
Assured, *Certus, a, um* adj.
At a great rate, *Magni.* gen.
At home, *Domi.* gen.
At length, *Tandem.* adv.
At present, *Impræsentiarum.* adv.
At what rate, *Quanti.* gen.
Athens, *Athenæ, arum.* 1 d.pl.
To attain to, *Assequor, eris. cutus,* 3 d.
To attempt, *Conor, aris, atus.* 1 d.
An Attempt, *Cæptum, i.* 2 n.
To attend, *Attendo, is, di.* 3 a.
Attentive, *Attentus, a, um.* adj.
Augustus, *i.* 2 m.
An Aunt, *Amita, æ.* 1 f.
To avoid, *Fugio, is, gi.* 3 a.
An Author, *Author, oris.* 3 m.
Authority, *Potestas, atis.* 3 f.
The Autumn *autumnus, i.* 2 m

B

BAbylon, *onis* 3 f.
Back, *Tergum, i.* 2 n.
Bad, *Malus, a, um.* adj.
A Bag, *Sacculus, i.* 2 m.
To banish, *Expello, is, ulsi.* 3 a.
To be banished, *Exulo, as, avi.* 1 n.
A Bank of a River, *Ripa, æ.* 1 f.
A Barbarian, *Barbarus, i.* 2 m.
Barbarous, *Immanis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
To bark, *Latro, as, avi.* 1 n.
Base, *Vilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Baseness, *Vilitas, tatis.* 3 f.
A Battel, *Prælium, ii.* 2 n.
To bawl, *Clamito, as, avi.*
A Sun-beam, *Jubar, aris.* 3 n.
A Bean, *Faba, æ.* 1 f.
To bear, *Suffero, ers, sustuli.* v. irr.

To bear, *Vinco, cis, vici.* 3 con. a.
To bear away, *Aufero, ers, abſtuli.* 3 irr.
A Bear, *Urſa, æ.* 1 d. f.
A Beaſt, *Brutum, i.* 2 n.
A Beaſt for labour, *Jumentum, i.* 2 n.
To beat, *Verbero, as, avi.* 1 a.
To be beaten, *Vapulo, as, avi, atus.* n. p. 1.
Beauty, *Pulchritudo, inis.* 3 f.
Beautiful, *Venuſtus, a, um.* adj.
Becauſe, *Quia.* conj.
Becauſe of, *Propter.* prep. ac.
to become pale, *palleſco, cis.* 3 n
To become, *Fio, is, factus.* 3 n. paſſ.
To become or adorn, *Decet, es, cui.*
A Bed, *Lectum, i.* 2 d. n.
To be, *Sum, es, fui.* v. irr.
A Bee, *Apis, is.* 3 f.
Before, *antea*, if a Noun and a Verb ſtand next, *antequam*, otherwiſe *ante*, prep. ac.
Beggery, *Paupertas, atis.* 3 f.
To beget, *Gigno, is, ui.* 3 a.
To begin, *Incipio, is, epi.* 3 a.
A beginning, *Initium, ii.* 2 n.
To beg or ask, *Rogo, as, avi.* 1 a.
To beg as a Begger, *Mendico, as, avi.* 1 a.
A Begger, *Mendicus, i.* 2 m.
To beguile, *Decipio, is, epi.* 3 a.
To behave, *Gero, is, ſſi.* 3 a.
Behaviour, *Geſtus, us.* 4 m.
To behove, *Oportet.* imp.
To believe, *Credo, is, didi,* 3 a.
A Believer, *Fidelis, is.* 3 m.
A Bell, *Campana, æ.* 1 f.
To bellow, *Mugio, is, ivi.* 4 n.
The Belly, *Venter, tris.* 3 m.
To belong, *Pertineo, es, ui.* 2 n.
Beloved, *Dilectus, a, um.* part.
To be beloved, *Diligor, is, ectus* 3 p.
To bend, *Incurvo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Beneficial, *Utilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 a.
Benefit, *Commodum, i.* 2 n.
A Berry, *Vaccinium, ii.* 2 n.
Beſide, *Præter.* prep. ac.
Beſides, *Præterea.* adv.
Beſt with a ſubſt. *Optimus, a, um*; after a Verb, *Optime.* adv.
At beſt, *Saltem.* adv.
Beſtial, *Brutus, a, um.* adj.
To beſtow, *Dono, as, avi.* act.
To betake, *Recipio, is epi.* 3 n.
To betray, *Prodo, is, didi.* 3 act.
To betray or ſhew, *Indico, as, avi.* 1 a.
Better, *Melior, us, oris.* adj. 3 a.
Between, *Inter.* prep. ac.
To beware of, *Caveo, es, vi.* 2 conj
To bewail, *Ploro, as, avi.* 1 act.
To bewitch, *Faſcino, as, avi.* act
A Bible, *Biblia, æ.* 1 d. f.
To bid, *Jubeo, es, juſſi.* 2 a.
Bigger, *Major, jus, oris.* adj. 3 art.
To bind, *Ligo, as, avi.* 1 act
To blind, *Cæco, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Bird, *Avis, is.* 3 f.

Birth, *Natus, i.* 2 m.
To bite, *Mordeo, es, momordi.* 2 a
Bitter, *Acer, ra, crum.* adj. b.
Bitterneſs, *Acerbitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Black, *Niger, a, um.* adj. b.
To blame, *Culpo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Blame, *Culpa, æ.* 1 f.
Blameleſs, *Inſons, tis.* adj. 3 art.
To blaſt, *Minuo, is, ui,* 3 a.
To bleat, *Balo, as, avi.* 1 m.
To bleſs, *Benedico, is, xi.* 3 a.
To bleſs or proſper, *Secundo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Bleſſed, *Beatus, a, um.* 3 ter. adj.
Bleſſedneſs, *Beatitudo, inis.* 3 f.
A Bleſſing, *Benedictio, onis.* 3 f.
Blind, *Cæcus, a, um.* adj 3 a.
A Blockhead, *Hebes, etis.* 3 m.
Blood, *Sanguis, inis.* 3 m.
Bloody, *Sanguinolentus, a, um.* adj.
To blow, *Flo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Blunt, *Obtuſus, a, um.* adj.
To blunt, *Hebeto, as, avi.* 1.
A Boar, *Aper.* 1, 2 m.
To boaſt, *Glorior, aris, atus.* 1 d.
A Boaſter, *Thraſo, onis.* 3 m.
The Body, *Corpus, oris.* 3 n.
Bold, *Audax, acis.* adj. 3 art.
Boldly, *Audacter,* adv.
A Bond, *Vinculum, i.* 2 n.
A Book, *Liber, i.* 2 m.
A Bookſeller, *Bibliopola æ,* 1 m
A Boot, *Ocrea, æ,* 1 f.
To be born, *Naſcor, eris, natus,* 3 d.
Born, *Natus a, um.* part.
To borrow, *Mutuo accipio, is, epi.*
Botcher, *Veteramentarius, ii,* 2 m.
Both, *et,* conj
Both, *uterq; aq; umq; trius.* adj.
A blackberry, *vaccinium, ii.* 2 n.
A Bound, *Limes, itis.* 3 m.
Bounty, *Benignitas, atis.* 3 f.
A Boy, *Puer, ri.* 2 m.
Brains, *Ingenium, ii.* 2 n.
Brave, *Grandis, e.* adj. 3 art.
To bray like an Aſs, *Rudo, is. di.* 3 n.
Bread, *Panis, is.* 3 m.
To break, *Rumpo, is, upi.* 3 art.
To break Peace or Promiſe, *Violo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Breaking ſubſt. *Violatio, onis.* 3 f.
To breathe, *Spiro, as, avi.* 1 n.
Bribes, *Munera, um.* 3 plu. n.
A Bridle, *Frænum, i.* 2 n.
Bright, *Lucidus, a, um.* adj.
Brimſtone, *Sulphur, uris,* 3 n.
To bring, *Fero, ers, tuli,* irr.
To bring forth, *Profero, fers, tuli.* 3.
Britain, *Britannia, æ.* 1 f.
Broad, *Latus, a, um,* adj.
A Brook, *Torrens, tis.* 3 m.
A Brother, *Frater, tris.* 3 m.
To be brought, *Adduco, is, uxi.* 3 a.
A Brute, *Brutum, i.* 2 n.
Brutiſh, *Brutus, a, um.*
A Buckler, *Clypeus, i.* 2 m.
To build, *Struo, is, uxi.* 3 art.
A Bull, *Taurus, i,* 2 m.
A Bull of the Pope, *Bulla, æ.*

A Bul-

A Bulwark, *Munimen, inis.* 2 n.
To burn, *Uro, is, uſſi.* 3 art. *ardeo, es.* 2 n.
A Burthen, *Onus, eris.* 3 n.
To bury, *Sepelio, is, ivi.* 4 a.
A Buſh, *Dumetum, i.* 2 n.
To be buſied, *Occupor, aris, atus.* p.
Buſy or buſied, *Occupatus.* part. *a, um.*
Buſineſs, *Negotium, ii.* 2 n.
A Buſy-body, *Percontator, oris.* 3 m.
But, *ſed.* conj.
But, *per*, except, *niſi*, conj.
To buy, *Emo, is, mi.* 3 a.
By reaſon of, *propter.* præp. ac.
By much, *multo.*
By far, *longè.* adv.
A Butcher, *Lanius, ii.* 2 m.

C

CAlamity, *Infortunium, ii.* 2 n.
Calends, *Calendæ, arum.* 1 plu. f.
To call, *Appello, as, avi*, 1 act.
To call to any place, *Voco, as, avi.* 1 a.
To call to mind, *Reputo, as, avi.* 1 a.
To Cackle, *Glocio, is, ivi.* n 4.
Calm, *Tranquillus, a, um*, adj.
Cambridge, *Cantabrigia, æ*, 1 f.
Can, *Poſſum.* irr.
A Candle, *Candela, æ*, 1 f.
Cannot, *Nequeo, is, ivi* 4 n.
Canterbury, *Dorobernia, æ.* 1 f.
Capable, *Capax, acis*, adj. 3 art.
A Captain, *Dux, cis.* 3 m.
To care, *Curo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Care, *Cura, æ.* 1 f.
Careful, *Sedulus, a, um.* adj.
Carefully, *Diligenter.* adv.
To care for, *Proſpicio, is, exi.* 3 a.
A Carkaſs, *Cadaver, eris.* 3 n.
A Carpenter, *Faber lignarius*, 2 m.
To carry, *Porto, as, avi.* 1 a.
To carve meat, *Carpo, is, pſi.* 3 conj. a.
To carry about, *Circumfero, fers, tuli.* 3 a.
Carved, *Sculptus, a, um.* par.
To caſt, *Jacio, cis, eci.* 3 a.
A Cat, *Felis, is.* 3 f.
To catch, *Arripio, is, ui.* 3 act.
Cattle, *Pecus, udis.* 3 f.
A cauſe or reaſon, *Cauſa, æ.* 1 f.
To cauſe, *Facio, is, eci.* 3 n.
Cautious, *Cautus, a, um.* adj.
To ceaſe, *Deſino, nis, ivi.* 3 a.
To be certain, *conſto, as, titi.* 1 n.
Certainly, *Certè.* adv.
Cæſar, *aris.* 3 m.
A Chamber, *Cubiculum, i.* 2 n.
A Champion, *Pugil, ilis.* 3 m.
A Chain, *Catena, æ.* 1 f.
To change, *Muto, as, avi.* 1 a.
Charges, *Sumptus, us.* 4 plu. m.
To charge, *Jubeo, es, uſſi.* 2 act.
Charity, *Charitas, atis.* 3 f.
To chaſtiſe, *Caſtigo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Cheap, *Vilis, e.* adj. 3 a.
To cheat, *Fraudo, as, avi.* 1 a.
A Cheek, *Gena, æ.* 1 f.
To cheriſh, *Foveo, es, vi.* 2 a.

A Cheſt,

a Cheſt, *Arca, æ.* 1 f.
a Chicken, *Pullus Gallinaceus.* 2 m.
chief, *ſummus, a, um.* adj.
a Child, *Puer, eri.* 2 m.
Children, *Liberi, orum.* 2 plu. m.
childiſh, *puerilis, e, is.* adj.
a Chimney, *Caminus, i.* 2 m.
choice, *electio, onis.* 3 f.
Chriſt, *Chriſtus, i.* 2 m.
a Chriſtian, *Chriſtianus, i.* 2. m.
Chriſtian, *Chriſtianus, a, um.* adj.
a Church, *Templum, i.* 2 n.
to chuſe, *eligo, is, egi.* 3 a.
a Chymiſt, *Alchimiſta. æ* m.
Cicero, *onis,* 3 m.
a City, *Urbs, is.* 3 f.
a Citizen, *Civis, vis.* 3 c.
clean, *mundus, a um.* adj.
clear, *inſons, tis,* adj. 3. art.
clearneſs, *perſpicacitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Clemency, *Clementia, æ.* 1 f.
a Client, *Cliens, tis.* 3 m.
to climb, *ſcando, is, di.* 3 a.
a Cloak, *Pallium, ii.* 2 n.
Cloaths, *Veſtes, ium.* 3 plu. f.
a Clock, *Horologium, ii.* 2 n.
Clodius, *ii,* 2 m.
a Cloſet, *Muſæum, i.* 2 n.
a Cloud, *Nubes, is,* 3 f.
a Coat, *Tunica, æ.* 1 f.
a Cock, *Gallus, i.* 2 m.
cocker'd, *indultus, a um.* p.
cold, *frigidus, a, um.* adj.
Colour, *Color, oris.* 3 m.
to chatter, *garrio, is ivi.* 4 n.
to charge, *jubeo, jubes, juſſi.* v. 2 a.
Cloth, *Pannus, i.* 2 m.
a Colt, *Pullus equinus, i.* 2 m.
to come, *venio, is, eni.* 4 n.
to come to, *pervenio, is, eni.* 4 n. c.
to come near to, *accedo, is, ſſi.* 3 a.
a Comedy, *Fabula, fabulæ.* 1 f.
Comfort, *Solamen, inis.* 3 n.
a Command, *Juſſum, i.* 2 n.
to command, *jubeo, es, juſſi.* 2 a.
commendable, *laudabilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 a.
Commendation, *Laus. dis.* 3 f.
to commend, *Laudo, as, avi.* 1 act.
to commit, *credo, is, didi.* 3 a.
to commit a fault, *patro, as, avi.* 1 a.
common, *communis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
a Commodity, *Merces, dis.* 3 f.
commonly, *ſæpiſſimè.* adv.
the common People, *Vulgus, i.* 2 m.
The Commonwealth, *Reſpublica, cæ.* 5 f.
to communicate, *communico, as, avi.* 1 act.
a Companion, *Socius, ii.* 2 f. m.
Company, *Societas, tatis.* 3 f.
to compare, *comparo, as, avi.* 1 a.
competent, *mediocris, e.* adj. 3 art.

to conceal, *celo, as, avi.* 1 act.
concerning, *de* præp. abl.
It concerneth, *Interest.* imp.
to concern, *spectо, as, avi,* 1 act.
to condemn, *damno, as, avi.* 1 a.
a Condition, *Sors, tis.* 3 f.
To conduce, *Conduco, cis, xi.* 3 a.
To conduct, *Deduco, cis, xi.* 3 a com.
to confine, *Coerceo, ces, cui.* 2 a.
To conquer, *Supero, as, avi.* 1 a.
a Conqueror, *Victor, oris.* 3 m.
Consideration, *Consideratio, onis.* 3 f.
Conscience, *Conscientia, æ.* 1 f.
Conscientious, *Pius, a, um.* adj.
To consent, *assentior, iris, itus.* 4 d.
Constancy, *Constantia, æ.* 1 f.
to construe, *expono, is, sui.* 3 a.
To consult for, *Prospicio, is, xi.* 3 n.
to consume, *consumo, is, psi,* 3 a.
to consummate, *consummo, as, avi.* 1 a.
a Consumption, *Tabes, bis.* 3 f.
Contagious, *tabificus, a, um.* adj.
to contain, *Contineo, es, ui.* 2 a.
Contempt, *contemptus, us.* 4 m.
Contemptible, *Temnendus, a, dum.* part.
Content, *Contentus, a, um.* adj.
Contentedness, *Contentatio, onis.* 3 f.
Contentment, *Prolubium, ii,* 2 n.
a Contention, *Lis, itis.* 3 f.
to continue, *Permaneo, es, ansi,* 2 a.
To contract, *Contraho, his, axi,* 3 a.
To contract a debt, *Conflo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Contrary, *Contrarius, a, um.* adj.
To contrive, *Excogito, as, avi,* 1 a.
Convenient, *Commodus, a, um.* adj.
To converse, *Versor, aris, satus.* 1 d.
To Convict, *Coarguo, is, ui.* 3 a.
a Cook-maid, *Coqua, æ.* 1 f.
a Copy, *Exemplar, aris.* 3 n.
Corn, *Seges, etis.* 3 f.
To correct, *Corrigo, is, xi.* 3 a.
To correct a Book, *Elimo, as, avi.* 1 a.
To corrupt, *corrumpo, is, pi.* 3 a.
Cost, *Expensum, i.* 2 n.
To cost, *Consto, as, stitt.* 1 n.
a Cottage, *Casa, æ.* 1 f.
a Covering, *Tegmen, inis.* 3 n.
To covet, *Cupio, is, ivi.* 3 a.
Covetous, *Cupidus, a, um. Avarus, a, um.* adj.
Covetousness, *avaritia, æ.* 1 f.
Counsel, *Consilium, ii,* 2 n.
a Counsellor, *Suasor, oris.* 3 m.
The Countenance, *Vultus, us.* 4 m.
One's own Country, *Patria, æ.* 1 f.
a Country, *Regio, onis.* 3 f.

The Country, *Rus, ruris.* 3 n.
a Country-houſe, *Domus, us, Suburbana.* 2 4 f.
Courage, *Fortitudo, inis.* 3 f.
Courageous, *Fortis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
a Courteſy, *Beneficium, ii.* 3 n.
the Court, *Aula, æ.* 1 f.
Courteous, *comis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
to Court, *ambio, bis, bivi.* 4 n.
a Couſin, *affinis, is.* 3 c. 2.
a coward, *puſillanimus, i.* 2 m.
Cowardly, *timidus, a, um.* adj.
Craft, *aſtutia, æ.* 1 f.
to create, *creo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Creation, *creatio, onis.* 3 f.
Creator, *creator, oris.* 3 m.
a Creature, *creatura, æ.* 1 f.
to creep, *repo, is, pſi.* 3 n.
Credit, *fides, ei.* 5 f.
a Creditor, *creditor, oris.* 3 m.
to creep upon, *irrepo, is, pſi.* 3 n.
a crime, *crimen, inis.* 3 n.
Crooked, *curvus, a, um.* adj.
to crop, *carpo, is, pſi.* 3 a.
a crow, *corvus, vi.* 2 m.
a crown, *diadema, atis.* 3
Cruel, *crudelis, e, lis.* adj 3. art.
Cruelty, *crudelitas, tatis.* 3 f.
to cry, *clamo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Culpable, *culpandus, a, dum.* adj.
Cunning, *aſtutia, æ.* 1 f.
Cunning, *aſtutus, a, um.* adj.
a cure, *medela, æ.* 1 f.
a curſe, *maledictum, i.* 2 n.
curſed, *dirus, a, um.* adj.
cuſtom, *conſuetudo, inis.* 3 f.
to cut, *ſeco, as, ui.* 1 a.

D.

A Dagger, *Pugio, onis.* 3 f.
Daily, *quotidianus, a, um.* adj.
Daily, *quotidie.* adv.
Dainties, *deliciæ, arum.* 1 plu. f.
to Dance, *ſalto, as, avi.* 1 n.
Danger, *periculum, i.* 2 n.
Dangerous, *periculoſus, a, ſum.* adj.
to dare, *audeo, es, auſus.* 2 n. p.
a daring, *audacia, æ.* 1 f.
a dart, *telum, i.* 2 n.
a day, *dies, ei.* 5 m.
the day before, *pridie.* adv.
dead, *mortuus, a, um.* part.
Dear, *charus, a, um.* adj.
Dear without a Subſt. *magni* gen.
Death, *mors, tis.* 3 f.
a debt, *debitum, i.* 2 n.
a daughter, *filia, æ.* 1 f.
the Decalogue, *decalogus, i.* 2 m.
Decayed, *collapſus, a, um.* part.
Deceit, *fraus, dis.* 3 f.
to deceive, *fallo, is, fefelli.* 3 a.
A deceiver, *fraudator, oris.* 3 m.
A deed, *factum, i.* 2 n.
Deed, *res, rei.* 5 f.
Deep, *profundus, a, um.* adj.

To defeat, *fruſtror, aris, atus.* 1 d.
A defect, *defectus, us.* 4 m.
To defend, *tueor, eris, itus.* 2 d.
A debtor, *debitor, oris.* 3 m.
A defender, *propugnator, oris.* 3 m.
delicate, *delicatus, a, um.* adj.
delightful, *delectabis, le.* adj. 3 a.
A defence, *tutamen, inis.* 3 n.
defiled, *pollutus, a, um* part.
To deform, *vitio, as, avi.* 1 a.
To degenerate, *degenero, as, avi.* 1 a.
A degree, *gradus, us.* 4 m.
To delay, *tardo, as, avi.* 1 a.
delay, *mora æ.* 1 f.
A delayer, *ceſſator, oris.* 3 m.
depraved, *depravatus, a, um.* part.
To delight, *juvo, as, vi* 1 a.
delight, *voluptas, tatis.* 3 f.
delights, *deliciæ, arum,* plu. 1 f.
To deliver, *trado, dis, didi.* 3 a.
Delphos, *phi.* 2 f.
To demand, *poſtulo, as, avi.* 1 a.
To deny, *denego, as avi.* 1 a.
A denial, *abnegatio, onis.* 3 f.
To devour, *voro, as, avi* 1 a.
A diamond, *adamas, antis.* 3 m.
A dictionary, *dictionarium, ii.* 2 n.
To dye Colours, *tinge, is, xi,* 3 a.
A dyer, *tinctor, oris.* 3 m.
A diety, *dietas, tatis.* 3 f.
To deprive, *deprivo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Deſcent, *origo, inis.* 3 f.
To deſerve, *mereor, eris, ritus.* 2 d.
Deſerved, *dignus, a, um.*
Deſervedly, *merito,* adv.
A deſign, *propoſitum, ti.* 2 n.
To deſign, *ſtatuo, is, ui,* 3 n.
Deſigned, *deſtinatus, a, um.* p.
Deſire, *cupido, inis.* 3 f.
A deſire, *votum, i.* 2 n.
Deſirous, *cupidus, a, um.*
Deſirable, *exoptabilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 a.
To deſpiſe, *temno, nis, pſi* 3 a.
Deſtitute, *orbus, a, um.* adj.
To deſtroy, *perdo, dis, didi.* 3 a.
Deſtruction *exitium, ii,* 2 n.
To detain, *detineo, es, ui.* 2 a.
Detraction, *detractio, nis.* 3 f.
The devil, *diabolus, li.* 2 m.
Deviliſh, *diabolicus, a um* adj.
To devote, *vovco, es, vi.* 2 a.
A digger, *foſſor, oris.* 3 m.
Dignity, *dignitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Diabolical, *diabolicus, ca, cum.* adj.
A Dinner, *prandium, ii.* 2 n.
Different *diverſus, a, um.* adj.
Difficult, *difficilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 a.
Difficulty, *difficultas, tatis.* 3.
To dig, *fodio, is, di.* 3 a.
To diſcover, *retego, is, xi.* 3 a.
To diſcourſe, *confabulor, aris, latus.* d. 1.
Diligence, *ſedulitas, tatis.* 3 f.
diligent,

diligent, *ſedulus, a, um.* adj.
diligently, *ſedulo.* adv.
To dim, *offuſco, as, avi.* 1 a.
To diminiſh, *minuo, is, ui.* 3 act.
diſcreet, *prudens, tis.* adj. 3 art.
dirt, *lutum, ti.* 2 n.
dirty, *cænoſus, a, um.* adj.
dirtineſs, *turpitudo, inis.* 3 f.
To diſagree, *diſſideo, es, edi.* 2 n.
To deſpiſe, *ſperno, is, ſprevi.* 3 a.
A diſcourſe, *colloquium, ii.* 2 n.
To diſcharge, *fungor, ris, unctus.* 3 d.
To diſtract, *diſtraho, is, axi.* 3 act.
A diſeaſe, *morbus, i.* 2 m.
Diſgrace, *dedecus, oris.* 3 n.
Diſhoneſt, *inhoneſtus, a, um.* adj.
A diſhonour, *dedecus, oris.* 3 n.
To diſhonour, *dedecoro, as, avi.* 1 act.
To diſmiſs, *dimitto, is, miſi.* 3 act.
Diſobedience, *inobedientia, æ.* 1 f.
Diſobedient, *immorigeri, ra, rum.* adj.
To diſobey, *repugno, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Divine, *theologus, i.* 2 m.
To diſpleaſe, *offendo, is, di.* 3 act.
A diſpoſition, *ingenium, ii.* 2 n.
To diſpraiſe, *vitupero, as, avi.* 1 act.
A diſſembler, *ſimulator, oris.* 3 m.
Diſſimulation, *dolus, i.* 2 m.
To be diſtant, *diſto, tas, titi.* 1 n.
To diſtinguiſh, *dignoſco, cis, vi.* 3 a.
Divinity, *theologia, æ.* 1 f.
To diſtruſt, *diffido, dis, di.* 3 a.
Docile, *docilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Diverſion, *recreatio, onis.* 3 f.
To divide, *partio, is ivi.* 4 a.
Divided, *diſcors, is.* adj. 3 art.
Divine, *divinus, a, um.*
To divulge, *patefacio, is, eci.*
Docible, *docilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 a.
Doctrine, *doctrina, æ.* 1 f.
To do, *facio, is, feci.* 3 act.
To do evil, *patro, as, avi.* 1 act.
To do good, *benefacio, is, eci.* 3 act.
To do hurt, *dedo, dis, didi.*
Domeſtick, *domeſticus, a, um.* adj
Dominion, *dominium, ii.* 2 n.
A door, *oſtium, ii.* 2 n.
A Dog-Day, *Dies Caniculares.* 3 m.
Double, *duplex, icis,* adj. 3 art.
To double, *ingemino, as, avi.* 1 act.
To doubt, *dubito, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Dove, *columba, æ.* 1 f.
Downward, *Deorſum.* adv.
A Dog, *canis, is.* 3 m.
To draw or entice, *allicio, is, exi, & lexi.* act.
To draw, *traho, is, axi.* 3 a.
To draw a Picture, *delineo, as, avi.* 1 act.

dreadful, *horridus*, *a*, *um*. adj.
a Drawer, *promus*, *i*. 2 m.
to draw, *promo*, *is*, *pſi*. 3 a.
to draw down, *invoco*, *as*, *avi*. 1 act.
a droan, *fucus*, *i*. 2 m.
drink, *potus*, *us*. 4 m.
to drink, *bibo*, *is*, *bi*. 3 a.
to drown, *mergo*, *is*, *ſi*. 3 act.
A drunkard, *bibo*, *onis*. 3 m.
drunkenneſs, *ebrietas*, *tatis*. 3 f.
due, *debitus*, *a*, *um*. adj.
A dunghil, *ſtercorarium*, *ii*. 2 n.
dunghil, *ſordidus*, *a*, *um*, adj.
Dutch, *Batavus*. *i*. 2 m.
dutiful, *moriger*, *ra*, *rum*. adj.
duty, *Officium*, *ii*. 2 n. adj.
duty, *officiatus*, *a*, *um*. adj.
To dwell, *habito*, *as avi*. 1 a.
to dye, *morior*, *ris*, *mortuus*. 3 and 4 d.

E

EAch, *ſingulus*, *a*, *um*. adj.
Each other, *alter*, *a*, *rum*. adj.
an Eagle, *aquila*, *æ*. 1 f.
an Ear, *auris*, *is*. 3 f.
Early, *maturè*. adv.
Earneſtly, *ſtrenuè*. adv.
Earth, *terra*, *æ*. 1 f.
Earthly *terreſtris*, *re*, *ſtris*. adj. 3 art.
To eaſe, *levo*, *as*, *avi*. 1 a.
Eaſily, *facile*. adv.
Eaſy, *facilis*, *e*. adj. 3 art.
To eat, *edo*, *is*, *edi*. v. irr.
The edge, *acumen*, *inis*. 3 n.
Education, *educatio*, *onis*. 3 f.
To effect, *efficio*, *is*, *eci*. 3 a.
Effectual, *efficax*, *acis*. adj. 3 art.
An effect, *effectus*, *eventus*, *us*. 4 m.
An egg, *ovum*, *i*. 2 m.
The eighth, *octavus*, *a*, *um*. adj.
Eight hundred, *octingenti*, *æ*, *ta*. adj. plu.
Elder, *ſenior*, *oris*. adj. 3 art.
Elegancy, *elegantia*, *æ*. 1 f.
The element, *elementum*, *i*. 2 n.
An Elephant, *Elephas*, *antis*. 3 m.
The Eleventh, *undecimus*, *a*, *um*. adj.
Eloquence, *facundia*, *æ*. 1 f.
Eloquent, *facundus*, *a*, *um*. adj.
Elſe, *alius*, *a*, *ud*, *alius*. adj.
to embrace, *amplexor*, *aris*, *atus*. 1 d.
An Embrace, *Amplexus*, *us*. 4 m.
An Emperor, *imperator*, *oris*. 3 m.
An Empire, *imperium*, *ii*. 2 n.
An Employment, *negotium*, *ii*. 2 n.
Empty, *vacuus*, *a*, *um*. adj.
to encompaſs, *cingo*, *is*, *xi*. 3 n.
Encompaſſed, *cinctus*, *a*, *um*. part.
to encourage, *animo*, *as*, *avi*. 1 a.
Encouragement, *incitamentum*, *i*. 2 n.
to increaſe, *augeo*, *es*, *xi*. 2.
to increaſe, *creſco*, *is*, *crevi*. 3 a.

Encreaſe, *incrementum. i.* 2 n.
Encreaſing, *auctio, onis.* 3 f.
the end, *exitus, us.* 4 m.
An End, *finis, is.* 3 m.
to end, *abſolvo, vis, vi.* 3 a.
to endeavour, *nitor, ris, xus.* 3 d.
An endeavour, *conatus, us.* 4 m.
Endleſs, *æternus, a, um.* adj.
Endowed, *præditus, a, um.* adj.
An Endowment, *dos, tis.* 3 f.
to endure, *patior, ris, ſus.* 3 d.
An enemy, *inimicus, i.* 2 m.
to enfeeble, *debilito, as, avi.* 1 a.
Enflamed, *ardens, tis.* par. 3 ar.
England, *Anglia, æ.* 1 f.
Engliſh, *Anglicus, a, um.* adj
To enjoy, *fruor, eris, itus.* 3 d.
An enlightner, *illuminator, oris.* 3 m.
Enmity, *Inimicitia, æ.* 1 f.
To encamp, *caſtrametor, aris, tus.* 1 d.
To encline, *inclino, as, avi.* 1 a.
Enough, *ſat.* adv.
To enquire, *rogo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Enriching, *Locupletatio, onis.* 3 f.
To enlighten, *illumino, as, avi.* 1 a.
To enoble, *Nobilito, as, avi.* 1 a.
To enſnare, *Illaqueo, as, avi.* 1 a.
To enter into, *ingredior, eris, ſſus.* 3 d.
An enterprize, *cæptum, i.* 2 n.
To entice, *allicio, is, ui.* 3 a.
Entrails, *viſcera, um.* 3 plu. a.
To intreat, *Oro, as, avi.* 1 a.
Envy, *invidia, æ.* 1 f.
To envy, *invideo, es, di* 2 a.
Envious, *invidus, a, um.* adj.
Equal, *par, aris.* adj. 3 art.
An Error, *erratum, i.* 2 n.
To eſcape, *evado, is, ſi.* 3 a.
Eſpecially, *præcipuè.* adv.
To eſtabliſh, *ſtabilio, is, ivi.* 4 ac.
An eſtate, *facultates, tum.* 3 plu. f.
To eſteem or value, *æſtimo, as, avi.* 1 a.
To eſteem or reckon, *exiſtimo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Eternal, *Æternus, a, um.* adj.
Eternally, *in æternum, o.*
Eternity, *Æternitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Even, *vel.* conj.
An Event, *Eventus, us.* 4 m.
Everlaſting, *Æternus, a, um.* adj.
Every, *ſingulus, a, um* adj.
Every one, &c. *unuſquiſque, unaquaque, unumquodque.*
Every man, *unuſquiſque.*
Every where, *ubique.* adv.
An Evil, *flagitium, ii.* 2 n.
Evil, *malus, a, um.* adj.
Exact, *accuratus, a, um.* adj.
To examine, *examino, as, avi.* 1 act.
An Example, *exemplum, i.* 2 n.
To exceed, *exſupero, as, avi.* 1 act.

To excel, *præſto, as, titi.* 1 act.
Excellent, *promptus, a, um.* adj.
Excellent, *præſtans, tis.* part.
Excellency, *dignitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Except, *præter.* præp. acc.
Except, *præter.* conj.
Except, *niſi.* conj.
To excuſe, *purgo, as, avi.* 1 act.
An exerciſe, *exercitium, ii.* 2 n.
To exerciſe, *exerceo, es, ui.* 2 act.
Exhortation, *hortatus, us.* 4 m.
To exhort, *hortor, aris, atus.* 1 d.
Exile, *exilium, ii.* 2 n.
To exiſt, *exiſto, is, titi.* 3 n.
Expectation, *expectatio, onis.* 3 f.
To expect, *expecto, as, avi.* 1 act.
Experience, *experientia, æ.* 1 f.
Expiring, *completio, onis.* 3 f.
To expoſe *periclitor, aris, atus.* 1 d.
Expoſed, *obnoxius, a, um.* adj.
Expoſed, *expoſitus, a, um.* part.
To expreſs, *exprimo, is, ſſi* 3 a.
To extend, *attingo, is, xi.* 3 a.
To extend, *intendo, is, di.* 3 a.
To extinguiſh, *extinguo, uis, ui.* 3 a.
To extol, *effero, es, extuli.* 3 a.
An extream, *extremum, i.* 2 n.
An eye, *oculus, i.* 2 m.
Ever and anon, *ſubinde.* adv.

F.

A Fable, *apologus, i.* 2 m.
a Face, *facies, ei.* 5 f.
To facilitate, *facilito, as, avi.* 1 act.
To fade, *marceſco, cis.* 3 Incept.
To fail, *deficio, is, eci.* 3 act.
To faint, *deficio, cis, eci.* 3 act.
Fair, *pulcher, ra, um.* adj
Faithleſs, *infidus, a, um.* adj.
faith, *fides, ei.* 5 f.
faithful, *fidus, a, um.*
faithfulneſs, *fidelitas, tis.* 3 f.
The faithful, *fidelis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
To fall, *ruo, is, ui.* 3 n.
To fall, *cado, is, cecidi.* 3 n.
falſe, *erroneous, a, um.* adj.
fame, *gloria, æ.* 1 f.
a family, *familia, æ.* 1 f.
famous, *eximius, a, um.* adj.
fancy, *affectus, us.* 4 m.
far, *remotus, a, um* adj.
far, *longe.* adv.
a farmer, *agricola, æ.* 1 m. & f.
a farthing, *aſſis, is.* 3 m.
farther, *ulterior, us, oris.* adj. 3 art.
fartheſt, *extremus, a, um.* adj.
farewel, *Vale.* defect.
to faſt, *jejuno, as, avi.* 1 n.
to feel or handle, *tracto, as, avi.* 1 a.
fat, *pinguis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
fate, *fatum, i.* 2 n.

to faſten, *figo, is, xi.* 3 a.
faſtned, *fixus, a, um.* adj.
a Father, *pater, tris.* 3 m.
to fatten, *incraſſo, as, avi.* a 1.
a fault, *culpa, æ.* 1 f.
a favour, *gratia, æ.* 1 f.
a favourite *gratioſus, i.* 2 m.
to fear, *timeo, es, ui.* 2 n.
fear, *timor, oris.* 3 m.
fearful, *timidus, a, um,* adj. 3 term.
feeble, *debilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 a.
feebleneſs, *debilitas, tatis.* 3 f.
to feed, *paſco, is, pavi,* v. a. 3 c.
to feel, *tracto, as, avi.* 1 a.
to feel, *ſentio, is, ſi.* 4 act.
to feel, *patior, ris, paſſus.* 3 dep.
felicity, *felicitas, tis.* 3 f.
a fellow-ſoldier, *commilito, onis.* 3 m.
to fetch, *peto, is, ii,* & *ivi.* 3 act.
a fever, *febris, is.* 3 f.
few, *pauci, æ, a.* an adj. plu. 3 term.
a field, *ager, i.* 2 m.
a field for Wars, *campus, i.* 2 m.
fiery, *ferox, cis.* adj. 3 art.
fifty, *quinquaginta.* ind. pl.
to fight, *pugno, as, avi.* 1 act.
fighting, *pugnans, tis.* part. 3.
To fill, *impleo, es, evi.* 2 act.
filthy, *turpis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
To find out, *inquiro, is, ivi.* 3 a.
To find, *invenio, is, ni.* 4 act.
fine, *elegans, tis.* adj 3 art.
To finiſh, *conſummo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Fire, *ignis, is.* 3 m.
Firm, *firmus, a, um.* adj.
Firſt, *primus, a, um.* adj.
A Fiſher-man, *Expiſcator, oris.* 3 m.
A Fiſhing-Cane, *Arundo, inis.* 3 f.
A fiſt, *pugnus, i* 2 m.
To fit, *apto, as, avi.* 1 a.
Fit, *idoneus, a, um.* adj.
Five, *quinque,* adv.
A Flame, *flamma, æ.* 1 f.
Flat, *ſupinus, a, um.* adj. 3 term.
A Flatterer, *Adulator, oris.* 3 m.
To Flatter, *adulor, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
Flattering, *adulatorius, a, um.* adj.
Flattery, *aſſentatio, onis.* 3 f.
a fleece, *vellus, ris.* 3 n.
Fleſh, *caro, nis.* 3 f.
Flexible, *flexilis, is.* adj. 3 art.
a flight, *fuga, æ.* 1 f.
Flouriſhing, *florens, tis,* adj. 3 art.
a flower, *flos, oris.* 3 m.
to fly, *fugio, is, gi* 3 neut.
Flying, *volitans, tis,* part. 3 art.
Flint, *ſilex, itis.* 3 f.
a Foe, *hoſtis, is.* 3 com. 2.
To follow, *ſequor, eris, utus.* 3 dep.
Folly, *ſtultitia, æ.* 1 f.
To be fond of, *indulgeo, es, ſi,* 2 a.

Food, *cibus, bi.* 2 m.
A Fool, *ſtultus, i.* 2 m.
fooliſh, *ſtolidus, a, um.* adj.
a foot, *Pes, dis.* 3 m.
a Footman, *Pedes, itis.* 3 com. 2.
a footſtep, *Veſtigium, i.* 2 n
for, *nam.* Conj.
for, *pro.* prep.
To forbid, *prohibeo, es, ui.* 2 a.
Forbidden, *vetitus, a, um.* adj.
To force, *compello, is, uli.* 3 a.
Force, *vires, ium.* 3 plu. f.
to forego, *præeo, is, ivi.* 4 neut.
A forehead, *frons, tis.* 3 f.
Foreſight, *proſpectus, us.* 3 m.
For ever, *in æternum.*
to foreſee, *proſpicio, is, xi.* 3 act.
to forget, *obliviſcor, ris, itus.* 3 dep.
forgetful, *immemor, ris.* adj. 3 art.
to forgive a fault, *remitto, is, ſi.* 3 a.
to forgive a Perſon, *ignoſco, is, ovi.* 3 n.
to feign, *fingo, is, xi.* 3 a.
A form, *claſſis, is.* 3 f.
former, *prior, oris.* adj. 3. art.
former, *priſtinus, a, um.* adj.
formerly, *antehac.* adv.
formidable, *formidabilis, lis.* adj.
foreigner, *peregrinus, a, um.* adj.
for the moſt part, *plerumque.* adv.
for the time to come, *poſthac.* adv.
fortitude, *fortitudo, inis.* 3 f.
fortune, *fortuna, æ.* 1 f.
forty, *quadraginta.* adj. pl. ind.
forward, *pronus, a, um.* adj.
foul, *fœdus, a, um.* adj.
to foul, *maculo, as, avi.* 1 a.
foundation, *fundamentum, i.* 2 n.
a fountain, *fons, tis.* 3 n.
four, *quatuor,* adj. plu. ind.
fourth, *quartus, a, um.* adj.
a fowler, *auceps, cupis.* 3 com. 2.
a fox, *Vulpes, is.* 3 f.
France, *Gallia, æ.* 1 f.
free, *immunis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
to free, *expedio, is. ivi.* 4 act.
to freeze, *congelo, as, avi.* 1 n.
frequent, *frequens, tis.* adj. 3 art.
frequency, *aſſiduitas, tis.* 3 f.
frequently, *frequenter.* adv.
to fret, *vexo, as, avi.* 1 a.
a friend, *amicus, i.* 2 m.
friendſhip, *amicitia, æ.* 1 f.
friendly, *amicè.* adv.
to fright, *terreo, es, ui.* 2 a.
from, *a, ab, abs.* prep. abl.
from door to door, *oſtiatim.* adv.
to frown, *frontem contrahere.*
a frown, *ruga, æ.* 1 f.
fruit, *fructus.* 4 m.
fruitful, *fœcundus, a, um.* adj.
full, *plenus, a, um.* adj.

A Fuller, *Fullo, onis.* 3 m.
To fulfil, *Adimpleo, es, evi.* 2 a.
A Funeral, *Funus, funeris.* 3 n
Furious, *Furioſus, a, um.* adj.
Fury, *Furor, oris.* 3 m.
Future, *Futurus, a, um.* adj.
For the future, *In poſterum.* adv.

G.

GAin, *Lucrum, i.* 2 n.
A Gall, *Fel, lis.* 3 n.
To gallop, *Curſu concitato feror, equum agere.*
The Gallows, *Patibulum, i.* 2 n.
A Gameſter, *Aleator, oris.* 3 m.
A Garden, *Hortus, i.* 2 m.
A Garment, *Veſtis, tis.* 3 f.
To gather, *Colligo, is, egi.* 3 act.
Gay, *Elegans, tis.* adj. 3 art.
A General of an Army, *Imperator, oris.* m.
Generoſity, *Magnificentia, æ.* 1 f.
Generous, *Generoſus, a, um.*
Gentility, *Generoſitas, atis.* 3 f.
Gently, *Leniter*, adv.
A Geographer, *Geographus, i.* 2 m.
To get, *Acquiro, is, ſivi.* 3 a.
To get, *Aſſequor, eris, cutus.* 3 dep.
To get, *Adipiſcor, eris, ptus.* 3 dep.
A Giant, *Gigas, ntis.* 2 m. g
A Girl, *Puella, æ.* 1 f.
A Gift, *Donum, i.* 2 n.
To give, *Do, as, dedi* 1 act.
To give or reſtore, *Reddo, is, didi.* 3 act.
To give thanks, *Gratias ago,* 3
To give over, *Deſino, is, ivi, ii.* 3 neut.
Given, *Deditus, a, um.* part.
To be glad, *Gaudeo, es, viſus.* 2 n. p.
To gladden, *Exhilaro, as, avi.* 1 act.
Glittering, *Fulgidus, a, um.* adj.
Glory, *Gloria, æ.* 1 f.
Glorious, *Eximius, a, um.* adj.
A Glove, *Chirotheca, æ.* 1 f.
A Glutton, *Helluo, onis.* 3 m.
God, *Deus, i.* 2 m.
Godly, *Pius, a, um.* adj.
Godly, *Pie.* adv.
Godlineſs, *Pietas, tatis.* 3 f.
To go, *Eo, is, ivi.* 4 n.
To go, *Gradior, eris, eſſus.* 3 dep.
To go away hence, *Abeo, is, ivi.* 4 n.
To go out, *Exeo, is, ivi.* 4 n.
To go up, *Aſcendo, is, di.* 3 n.
Gold, *Aurum, i.* 2 n.
Golden, *Aureus, a, um.* adj.
Good, ſubſt. *Utilitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Good, *Bonus, a, um.*
Goodneſs, *Bonitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Good for, *Utilis, le, lis.* adj.
Good things, *Bona*, plu. n.
A Gooſe, *Anſer, eris.* 3 dep.
The Goſpel, *Evangelium, ii.* 2 n.
To govern, *Guberno, as, avi.* 1 act.
Government, *Regimen, nis.* 3 n.

a Governor, *Gubernator, oris.* 3 m.
To Grace, *condecoro, as, avi.* 1 a.
Grace, *Gratia, æ.* 1 f.
Gracious, *benignus, a, um.* adj.
Graciouſly, *benignè.* adv.
The Grammar, *Grammatica, cæ.* 1 f.
To grant, *concedo, is, ſſi.* 3 act.
Graſs, *Gramen, inis.* 3 n.
graſſy, *gramineus, a, um.* adj.
To gratify, *placeo, es, ui, itus.* 2 neut. paſſ.
a Grave, *Sepulchrum, i.* 2 n.
Great, *magnus, a, um.* adj.
Greatly, *magnoperè.* adv.
Greatneſs, *magnitudo, inis.* 3 f.
Greek, *Græcus, a, um.* adj.
Green, *viridis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
a Grecian, *Græcus, i.* 2 m.
Greedy, *avidus, a, um.* adj.
Greedily, *avidè.* adv.
Greece, *Græcia, æ.* 1 f. g.
a Grief, *dolor, oris.* 3 m.
Grief, *mæror, oris.* 3 m.
To grieve, *ango, is, xi.* 3 n.
To be grieved, *contriſtor, aris, atus.* 1 p.
To grieve, *doleo, es, ui.* 3 n.
To grin, *ringor, eris, rictus.* 3 dep.
To grind, *molo, is, ui.* act.
to groan, *gemo, is, ui.* 3 n.
a Groat, *Drachma, æ.* 1 f.
The ground, *humus.* 4 & 2 f.
On the ground, *humi.* gen.
to grow, *creſco, is, evi.* 3 n.
to grow or become, *fio, is, factus.* n. p.
to grow pale, *palleſco, is, ui.* 1. 3 n.
To grow proud, *ſuperbieſco, is, ui.* 3 n.
a Guardian, *Tutor, oris.* 3 m.
a gueſt, *conviva, æ.* 1 c. 2.
Guilt, *Reatus, us.* 4 m.
Guilty, *reus, a, um.* adj.
Guiltleſs, *inſcius, tis.* adj. 3 art.

H.

HAinous, *deteſtabilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Hair, *Crinis, is.* 3 m.
an hair-lace, *Vitta, æ.* 1 f.
To halt, *claudico, as, avi.* 1 n.
an halter, *capiſtrum, i.* 2 n.
an hand, *manus, us.* 4 f.
To handle, *tracto as, avi.* 1 a.
Handkerchief, *ſudariolum, i.* 2 n.
To hang, *ſuſpendo, is, di* 3 act.
Hang *pendeo, es, pependi.* 3 n.
Handſome, *venuſtus, a, um.* adj.
Hap, *fortuna, æ.* 1 f. d. g.
Happy, *fælix icis,* adj. 3 art.
To happen, *accido, is, di.* 3 n.
Happineſs, *fælicitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Hard, *durus, a, um.* adj.
Hard, *difficilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 a.
Hard, *malus, a, um.* adj.
an hare, *lepus, oris.* 3 m.
an harlot, *meritrix, icis.* 3 f.
Harmleſs, *innoxius, a, um.* adj.
To haſte, To haſten, } *propero, as avi.* 1 act.
Haſty, *properus, a, um.* adj.

a Hat,

A Hat, *Galerus, i.* 2 m.
To hate, *odi.* defect.
Hated
Hating } *Exoſus, a, um.* part.
Hateful
Hatred, *Odium, ii.* 2 n.
To have, *habeo, es, ui.* 2 act.
To hawk, *Aucupor, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
An Hawk, *Accipiter, tris.* 3 m.
Hay, *Fœnum, i.* 2 n.
The Head, *Caput, itis.* 3 n.
The Head-ach, *Cephalalgia, æ.* 1 f.
An Hedge, *Sepes, is.* 3 m.
To heal, *Sano, as, avi.* 1 act.
Healing, *Salutifer, a, um.* adj.
Health, *Salus, utis.* 3 f.
To heap up, *Accumulo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To hear, *Audio, is, ivi* 4 act.
Hearing, Subſt. *Auditus, us.* 4 m.
To hearken, *Auſculto, as, avi.* 1 a.
The Heart, *Animus, i.* 2 m.
The Heart, *Cor, dis.* 3 n.
Heat, *Ardor, oris.* 3 m.
An Heathen, *Ethnicus, i.* 2 m.
Heathenish, *Ethnicus, i, um.*
Heaven, *Cœlum, i.* 2 n.
Heavenly, *Cœleſtis, e, is.* adj. 3 a.
Heavy, *Gravis, vis.* adj. 3 a
He, *Ille, a, ud,* pron. adj.
An Heifer, *Juvenca, æ,* 1 f.
Hell, *Orcus, i.* 2 m.
Helliſh, *Infernalis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Help, *Auxilium, ii.* 2 n.
An Helper, *Adjutrix, icis.* 3 f.
Helpful, *Auxiliaris, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
To help, *Adjuvo, as, vi.* 1 ac.
To help on, *Promoveo, es, vi.* 2 ac.
A Hen, *Gallina, æ.* 1 f.
Henry, *Henricus, ci.* 2 m.
Her, *Ejus,* from *is, ea, id,* pr. adj.
An Herb, *Herba, æ.* 1 f.
Hereafter, *Poſthac,* adv.
To hide, *Abſcondi, is, di,* 3 a.
Hidden, *Abditus, a, um.* adj.
Highly, *Summus, a, um.* adj.
Highly, *Summe.* adv.
An Hill, *Collis, is.* 3 m.
Himſelf, *ſe,* pron. ſubſt.
To hinder, *Impedo, is, ivi.* 4 act.
To hire, *Conduco, is, xi.* 3 n.
His, *Ejus,* pron. adj.
His own, *Suus, a, um.* pron. adj.
An Hiſtorian, *Hiſtoricus, i.* 2 m.
Hitherto, *Adhuc.* adv.
An Hog, *Porcus, i.* 2 m.
To hold, *Teneo, es, ui.* 2 act.
To hold ones peace, *Taceo, es, ui.* 2 n.
Holy, *Sanctus, a, um.* adj.
Honeſt, *Honeſtus, a, um.* adj.
Honeſty, *Probitas, atis.* 3 f.
Honeſtly, *Honeſte,* adv.
Honey, *Mel, lis.* 3 n.
Honour, *Honor, oris.* 3 m.

Honourable to, *Decorus, a, um.* adj
Hopeful, *Spei bonæ.*
Hope, *Spes, ei.* 5 f.
Hope, *Fiducia, æ.* 1 f.
An Horn, *Cornu.* 4 n.
Horrid, *Horridus, a, um.* adj.
An Horſe, *Equus, i.* 2 m.
An Horſeman, *Eques, itis.* 3 com.
Hot, *Violentus, a, um.* adj.
An Hour, *Hora, æ.* 1 f.
Hourly, *in horas.*
A Houſe, *Domus, i, us.* 2, 4 f.
How, *Quam.* conj.
How greatly, *Quantopere*, adv.
How many, *Quot*, adv. *plu. inde*, adv.
How much, *Quantum.*
How, with an adj. *Quam.*
To howl, *Ululo, as, avi.* 1 n.
Huge, *Ingens, tis.* adj. 3 art.
Humane, *Humanus, a, um.*
Humble, *Humilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Humility, *Humilitas, tatis.* 3 f.
An hundred, *Centum.* indec.
Hungry, *Famelicus, a, um.* adj.
To Hunt, *Venor, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
A Hunting pole, *Perititi venatoria.* 1 f.
Huntſman, *Venator, oris.*
Hurtful, *Noxius, a, um.* 3 term. adj.
To hurt, *Cædo, is, cidi.* 3 act.
To hurt, *Noceo, es, ui.* 2 a.
A Husband, *Maritus, i.* 2 m.
Husbandman, *Agricola, æ.* 1 com. 2.
An Hypocrite, *Hypocrita, æ.* 1 m.
Hypocriſy, *Hypocriſis, is.* 3 f.

I.

I *Ego*, pron. ſubſt. gen. *mei.*
Jaſon, *Jaſon, onis.* 3 m.
The Jaundice, *Ictterus, i.* 2 m.
A Jaw, *Maxilla, æ.* 1 f.
Icy, *Glacialis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Joy, *Gaudium, ii.* 2. n.
Joyful, *Hilaris, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
Idle, *Otioſus, a, um.* adj.
Idleneſs, *Ignavia, æ.* 1 f.
Idlely, *Otioſe.* adv.
An Idol, *Imago, inis.* 3 f.
Jealous, *Zelotipus, a, um* adj.
To Jear, *Irrideo, es, ſi.* 2 act.
Jeruſalem, *Hieroſolima, æ.* 1 f.
Jeſus, *Jeſus, us.* 4 m.
Jet, *Gagates, tis.* 3 m.
A Jewel, *Gemma, æ.* 1 f.
Ignoble, *Ignobilis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
Ignominy, *Ignominia, æ.* 1 f.
Ignorant, *Ignarus, a, um.* adj.
Ignorance, *Ignorantia, æ.* 1 f.
An Image, *Imago, inis.* 3 f.
To imitate, *Imitor, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
Immoderately, *Immodice*, adv.
Impartial, *Æquus, a, um.* adj.
An impediment, *Impedimentum.* 2 n.
Impiety, *Scelus, ſceleris.* 3 n.
Impious, *Impius, a, um.* adj.

To

To impoſe upon, *Impono, is, ſui.* 3 act.
Impoveriſhing, ſubſt. *Diminutio, onis.* 3 f.
To improve, *Promoveo, es, vi.* 2 act.
Imprudence, *Inſcitia, æ.* 1 f.
Imprudent, *Imprudens, tis.* adj. 3 art.
Impudent, *Impudens, tis,* adj. 3 art.
I my ſelf, *Ipſe, a, um.* pron. adj.
In, *in,* præp. abl.
Inclination, *Propenſio, onis.* 3 f.
In compariſon of, *præ,* præp. abl.
Inconvenient, *Inconveniens, tis.* adj. art.
Increaſe, *Incrementum, i.* 2 n.
Indulgence, *Indulgentia, æ.* 1 f.
To indulge, *Indulgeo, es, ſi.* 2 act.
Induſtry, *Sedulitas, tis.* 3 f.
Induſtrious, *Sedulus, a, um.* adj.
Ineffectual, *Inefficax, acis.* adj. 3 art.
An Infant, *Infans, tis.* 3 com. 2.
Inferiors, *Inferiores, um.* adj. plu. 3 art.
Infinite, *Infinitus, a, um.* adj.
Ingenuous, *Ingenuoſus, a, um.* adj.
Ingratitude, *Ingratitudo, inis.* 3 f.
An Inhabitant, *Incola, æ.* 1 com. 2.
An Inheritance, *Hæreditas, tis.* 3 f.
Injuſtice, *Injuſtitia, æ.* 1 f.
To injure, *Noceo, es, ui.* 2 act.
Injurious, *Noxius, a, um.* adj.
Ink, *Atramentum, i.* 2 n.
An Inkhorn, *Atramentarium, ii.* 2 n.
An Inn, *Diverſorium, ii.* 2 n.
Innocency, *Innocentia, æ.* 1 f.
Innumerable, *Innumerus, a, um.* adj.
An inſtant, *Momentum, i.* 2 n.
Inſtead, *Loco,* adv.
Inſtrument, *Inſtrumentum, i.* 2 n.
Intemperance, *Intemperantia, æ.* 1 f.
To invade, *Invado, is, ſi.* 3 act.
To intend, *Statuo, is, ui.* 3 act.
Intermiſſion, *Intermiſſio, onis.* 3 f.
A interval, *Intervallum, i.* 2 n.
An Intention, *Intentio, onis.* 3 f.
In the mean time, / In the mean while, } *Interea,* adv.
In vain, *Fruſtrà.* adv.
To invent, *Excogito, as, avi.* 1 act.
Invincible, *Invictus, a, um.* adj.
To inſtruct, *Erudio, is, ivi.* 4 act
An Inſtructor, *Inſtitutor, oris.* 3 m.
An Inſtruction, *Documentum, i.* 2 n.
Inſtruction, *Monitus, us.* 4 d. m.

To

To invite, *Invito, as, avi,* 1 act.
Into, *in,* præp. Acc.
Inward, *Intimus, a, um.* adj.
Inviolable, *Inviolabilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
A Journey, *Iter, neris.* 3 n.
To join, *Amecto, is, ui.* 3 act.
Irkſome, *Moleſtus, a, um.*
Iron, *Ferrum, i.* 2 n.
Irreparably, *Irreparabiliter,* adv.
Iſaac, *Iſaacus, i.* 2 m.
It, *is, ea, id.* pron adj.
Italy, *Italia, æ.* 1 f.
The Itch, *Scabies, ei.* 5 f.
Joyful, *Lætus, a, um.* adj.
A Judge, *Judex, icis.* 3 m.
To Judge, *Judico, as, avi.* 1 a.
Judgment, *Judicium, ii.* 2 n.
Julius, *Julius, ii.* 2 m.
To Jump, *Salto, as, avi,* 1 n.
Juſt, *Juſtus, a, um.* adj.
Juſtice, *Juſtitia, æ.* 1 f.
Juſtly, *Juſte.* adv.

K.

TO keep, *Cuſtodio, is, ivi.* 4 act.
To keep, *Detineo, es, ui.* 2 a.
To keep a command, *obſervo, as, avi.* 1 ac.
To keep under, *Subjugo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To keep off, *Prohibeo, es, ui.* 2 act.
A Key, *Clavis, is.* 3 f.
To kick, *Calcitro, as, avi,* 1 a.
Kind, *Benignus, a, um.* adj.
Kindly, *Leniter,* adv.
Kindneſs, *Beneficium, ii.* 2 n.
Kindneſs, *Benignitas, tis.* 3 f.
A King, *Rex, gis.* 3 m.
A Kingdom, *Regnum, i.* 2 n.
To kill, *Occido, is, di.* 3 a.
A Knack, *Artificium, ii.* 2 n.
A Knave, *Nebulo, onis.* 3 m.
Knavery, *Impoſtura, æ.* 1 f.
A Knee, *Genu, u.* 4 n. indec.
To kneel, *Genuflecto, is, xi.* 3 act.
A Knife, *Culter, i.* 2 m.
A Knight, *Eques, itis.* 3 m.
Knowledge, *Scientia, æ.* 1 f.
A Knot, *Nodus, i.* 2 m.
To know, *Scio, is, ivi.* 1 act.
Not to know, *Neſcio, is, ivi.* 2.
Known, *Cognitus, a, um.* adj.

L.

LAborious, *Sedulus, a, um.* adj.
Labour, *Labor, oris.* 3 m.
To labour, *Conor, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
Laden, *Onuſtus, a, um.* adj.
A Lady, *Domina, æ.* 1 f.
A Lamb, *Agnus, i.* 2 m.
Lamentation, *lamentatio, onis.* 3 f.
To lament, *Lamentor, aris, atus.* 1 ac.
To lament, *Lugeo, es, xi.* 2 n.
Lamentable, *Lamentabilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
A Land, *Regio, onis.* 3 f.
A Language, *Lingua, æ.* 1 f.
Languid, *Languidus, a, um*
To languiſh, *languco, es, ui.* 2 n.

Large,

Large, *Amplus, a, um.* adj.
Laſt, *Ultimus, a, um.* adj.
At laſt, *Tandem.* adv.
Later, *Serus, a, um.* adj.
Latin, *Latinus, a, um.* adj.
Laudable, *Laudabilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
To laugh, *Rideo, is, ſi.* 2 act.
To laugh at, *Irrideo, is, ſi.* 2 act.
To laviſh, *Prodigo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Laviſhly, *Profuſe,* adv.
A Law, *Lex, gis.* 3 f.
Lawful, *Legitimus, a, um.* adj.
It is lawful, *Licet,* imperſ.
Lawleſs, *Illex, icis.* adj 3 art.
A Lawyer, *Juris-peritus.* 2 m.
Lawrel, *Laurus, i, us.* 2, 4 f.
To lay, *Struo, is, xi.* 3 ac.
To lay aſide, *Abjicio, is, eci.*
To lay open, *Patefacio, is, eci,* 3 a.
To lay out, *Impendo, is, di.* 3 a.
To lay up, *Repono, is, ſui.* 3 a.
To lay upon, *Impono, is, ſui.* 3 a.
Lazy, *Otioſus, a, um.* adj.
Lazineſs, *Ignavia, æ.* 1 f.
To lead, *Transfero, ers, tuli.* v. irr.
A League ſpace, *Leuca, æ.* 1 f.
To learn, *Diſco, is, didici.* 3 n.
A Learner, *Diſcipulus, i.* 2 m.
Learned, *Doctus, a, um.* p.
Learning, *Doctrina, æ.* 1 f.
To leap into, *Inſilio, is, ui,* & *ii.* 4 n.
Leiſure, *Otium, ii.* 2 n.
Leave, *Venia, æ.* 1 f.
To leave, *Relinquo, is, qui.* 3 a.
To leave off, *Deſino, is, ivi,* & *ii.* 3 n.
To be left, *Relinquor, eris, ctus.* p. 3.
Leyden, *Lugdunum, i.* 2 n.
To be at leiſure, *vacat,* imp.
To lend, *Commodo, as, avi.* 1 a.
Length, *Longitudo, inis.* 3 f.
Lenity, *Lenitas, atis.* 3 f.
Lent, *Commodatus, a, um.* par.
To be lent, *Commodor, aris, atus.* 1 paſſ.
Leſs, *Minor, us, oris.* adj. 3 art.
To leſſen, *Diminuo, is, ui.* 3 act.
A Leſſon, *Lectio, onis.* 3 f.
Leſt, *Ne,* conj.
Let, imp. mood.
Letter, *Typus, i.* 2 m.
Letters, *Literæ, arum.* plu. f.
A Lier, *Mendax, cis.* 3 com.
Liberal, *Ingenuus, a, um.* adj.
Liberty, *Libertas, atis.* 3 f.
Licentious, *Libidinoſus, a, um.* adj.
To lick up, *Lambo, is, bi.* 3 act.
To lie upon, *incumbo, is, ui.* 3 n.
Life, *Vita, æ.* 1 f.
Light, *Lux, cis.* 3 f.
Like, *Similis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
A Limb, *Artus, us.* 4 m.
Limb, *Membrum, i.* 2 n.
A Line, *Linea, æ.* 1 f.
A Lion, *Leo, onis.* 3 m.
A Lip, *Labium, ii.* 2 n.
Little, *Parvus, a, um.* adj.
Little, *Paululum,* adv.

A little

A little while, *Parumper*, adv.
Little, *Parum*, adv.
Little, *Exiguus, a, um.* adj.
The Liver, *Jecur, oris.* 3 n.
To live, *Vivo, is, xi.* 3 n.
A load, *Farcina, æ.* 1 f.
To be loaden, *Oneror, aris, atus.* 2 p.
To lodge, *Diverſor, aris, atus.* 1 p.
Lofty, *Sublimis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
To loiter, *Moror, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
London, *Londinum, i.* 2 f.
Long, *Longus, a, um.* adj.
Long, *Diu*, adv.
To look to, *Conſulo, is, ui.* 3 act.
To look to it, *Curo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To let looſe, *Remitto, is, ſi.* 3 act.
To looſe, *Solvo, is, vi.* 3 act.
Loquacity, *Loquacitas, tis.* 3 f.
A Lord, *Dominus, i.* 2 m.
To loſe, *Perdo, is, didi.* 3 act.
A Loſs, *Damnum, i.* 2 n.
A Lot, *Sors, tis.* 3 f.
Love, *Amor, oris.* 3 m.
To love, *Amo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Loud, *Sonorus, a, um.* adj.
A Lover, *Amator, oris.* 3 m.
Loving, *Blandus, a, um.* adj.
Loveliest, *Amantiſſimus, a, um.* adj.
Lovely, *Amabilis, e, lis.* adj.
A Louſe, *Pediculus, i.* 2 m.
Low, *Abjectus, a, um.* adj.
Loyal, *Pius, a, um.* adj.
Luſt, *Cupido, inis.* 3 f.
Luxury, *Luxuries, ei.* 5 f.
To Lie, *Cumbo, is, ui.* 3 n.
A Lie, *Mendacium, ii.* 2 n.
To lie flat, *Procumbo, is, ui.* 3 a.
To lie, *Mentior, is, itis.* 4 dep.
Lying, *Mendax, acis.* adj. 3 art.

M.

TO be made equal, *Adæquor, aris, atus.* 1 p.
To make fit, *Concinno, as, avi.* 1 act.
Mad, *Inſanus, a, um.* adj.
A Madman, *Demens, tis.* adj. 3 art.
Madneſs, *Inſania, æ.* 1 f.
A Magiſtrate, *Magiſtratus, us.* 4 m.
Magnanimity, *Fortitudo, inis.* 3 f.
A Magpye, *Pica, æ.* 1 f.
A Maidſervant, *Famula, æ.* 1 f.
To make, *Efficio, is, eci.* 3 act.
To make, *Paro, as, avi.* 1 act.
To make Exerciſe, *Compono, is, ſui.* 3 act.
To make happy, *Felicito, as, avi.* 1 act.
To make for or to, *Facio, is, eci.* 3 act.
A Maker, *Creator, oris.* 3 m.
A Malefactor, *Reus, i.* 2 m.
Malice, *Malitia, æ.* 1 f.
A Man, *Vir, ri.* 2 m.
Manhood, *Virilitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Mankind, *Genus humanum.* 3 n.
It is manifeſt, *Certum eſt*, imp.

Manly, *Virilis, e, lis.* adj, 3 art.
A Manner, *Mos, ris.* 3 m.
A Man-ſervant, *Famulus, i.* 2 m.
Manſlaughter, *Homicidium, ii.* 2 n.
Man's Eſtate, *Pubertas, tatis.* 3 f.
Manuſcript, *Manuſcriptum, i.* 2 n.
Many, *Multus, a, um.* adj.
Many times, *Sæpe.* adv.
A Mare, *Equa, æ.* 1 f.
Marble, *Marmor, oris.* 3 n.
To march, *Iterfacio, is, eci.* 3 act.
A Mark, *Nota, æ.* 1 f.
A Market, *Mercatus, i.* 2 m.
A Market-place, *Forum, i.* 2 n.
To Marry, *Nubo, is, pſi, nupta, ſum.* 3 n. paſſ.
A Mask, *Larva, æ.* 1 f.
A Maſon, *Cæmentarius, ii.* 2 m.
The Maſter, *Præceptor, oris.* 3 m.
A Maſter, *Dominus, i.* 2 m.
A Maſtiff, *Moloſſus, i.* 2 m.
A Matter, *Res, ei,* 5 f.
Matter, *Materia, æ.* 1 f.
It mattereth, *Refert.* imp.
A Mayor, *Prætor, oris.* 3 m.
Mean, *Modus, i.* 2 m.
Meat, *Cibus, i.* 2 m.
A meaſure, *Menſura, æ.* 1 f.
To meddle with, *Attingo, is, tigi.* 3 act.
A Medicine, *Medicina, æ.* 1 f.
A Meadow, *Pratum, i.* 2 n.
Meer, *Merus, a, um.* adj.
Meet, *Æquus, a, um.* adj.
To meet, *Obvenio, is, ni.* 4 n.
Memory, *Memoria, æ.* 1 f.
To mend, *Reparo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To mention, *Memoro, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Merchant, *Mercator, oris.* 3 m.
A mercy, *Beneficium, ii.* 2 n.
Mercy, *Miſericordia, æ.* 1 f.
Merciful, *Miſericors, dis.* adj. 3 art.
Merciful, *Clemens, tis.* adj 3 art.
Merit, *Meritum, i.* 2 n.
To merit, *Mereor, eris, itus.* v. dep.
A Meſſage, *Nuncium, ii.* 2 n.
Metal, *Metallum, i.* 2 n.
A method, *Modus, i* 2 m.
Middle, *Medius, a, um.* adj.
In the midſt of, *Inter,* præp. acc.
With all his might, *Proviſtus.*
Milk, *Lac, tis.* 3 neut.
A Mile, *Milliare, is.* 3 n.
Mild, *Clemens, tis.* adj. 3 art.
A mind, *Sententia, æ.* 1 f.
A mind, *Mens, tis.* 3 f.
Mindful, *Memor, oris.* adj. 3 art.
Mindfulneſs, *Memoria, æ.* 1 f.
To mingle, *Miſceo, es, ui.* 2 a.
A Miniſter, *Concionator, oris.* 3 m.
A Minute, *Momentum, i.* 2 n.
Mire, *Cœnum, i.* 2 n.
Miſchief, *Malum, i.* 2 n.

A Mi-

A Misery, *Miseria, æ.* 1 f.
Miserable, *Miser, a, um.* adj.
A Misfortune, *Infortunium, ii.* 2 n.
To mistake, *Erro, as, avi.* 1 a.
A Mystery, *Artificium, ii.* 2 n.
Mistriss, *Magistra, æ.* 1 f.
To moan, *Lugeo, es, xi.* 2 n.
To mitigate, *Minuo, is, ui.* 3 act.
To mock, *Ludo, is, si* 3 act.
Moderate, *Medicoris, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
Moderately, *Modicè.* adv.
Modesty, *Modestia, æ.* 1 f.
Moist, *Humidus, a, um.* adj.
A moment, *Momentum, i.* 2 n.
Money, *Pecunia, æ.* 1 f.
A Month, *Mensis, is.* 3 m.
A Moon, *Luna, æ.* 1 f.
Moral, *Moralis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
More, *Plus, ris.* adj. 3 art.
More, *Plures, rium.* adj. plu.
More, *Magis.* adv.
More after a Verb of buying, *Pluris.* gen.
Mortal, *Mortalis, e, lis* adj. 3 a.
Most, *Plurimum* adv.
Most men, *Plerique, aq; aq;* adj.
Mother, *Mater, is.* 3 f.
To mount, *Assurgo, is, xi.* 3 n.
Mount Ætna, *Ætna, æ.* 1 f.
A Mountain, *Mons, tis.* 3 m.
To mourn, *Lugeo, es, xi.* 2 n.
To move, *Moveo, is, vi.* 2 a.
To move, *Migro, as, avi.* 1 n.
Moveable, *Mobilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 a.
A Mouth, *Os, oris.* 3 n.
To mow, *Meto, is, sui.* 3 act.
A Mower, *Messor, oris.* 3 m.
Much, *Multum.* adv.
Mud, *Limus, i.* 2 m.
Much, *Multum.* adj.
A multitude, *Turba, æ.* 1 f.
Murther, *Homicidium, ii* 2 n.
A Mushroom, *Fungus, i.* 2 m.
Musick, *Musica, æ.* 1 f.
Mutual, *Mutuus, a, um.* adj.
A Murtherer, *Homicida, æ* 1 m.
My, *Meus, a, um.* pron. adj.

N.

THe Name, *Nomen, inis.* 3 n.
A Nation, *Gens, tis.* 3 f.
Nature, *Natura, æ.* 1 f.
A nature, *Ingenium, ii.* 2 n.
Naughty, *Nequam.* adj ind.
Near, *Prope.* adv.
Near, *Propinquus, a, um.* adj.
Neatness, *Elegantia, æ.* 1 f.
A necessary, *necessarium, ii.* 2 n.
Necessary, *Necessarius, a, um.* adj.
Necessity, *Necessitas, atis.* 3 f.
A Neck, *Collum, i.* 2 n.
Need, *Opus,* indec. adj.
Needy, *Indigus, a, um.* adj.
Neglect, *Neglectus, us.* 4 m.
To neglect, *Negligo, is, xi.* 3 act.
Negligence, *Negligentia, æ.* 1 f.
A Neighbour, *Proximus, i.* 2 m
Neighing, *Hinniens, tis.* part.
Neither, with not, *Nec.*
Neither, *Neuter, a, um, rius.* adj.
Never, *Nunquam.* adv.

Nevertheleſs, *Nihilo minus.* adv.
News, *Fama, æ.* 1 f.
New, *Recens, tis.* part. 3 a.
Next, *Proximus, a, um.* adj.
Next, *Proximè.* adv.
A Neſt, *Nidus, i.* 2 m.
A Net, *Rete, tis.* 3 neut.
Nigh, *Vicinus, a, um.* adj.
Night, *Nox, ctis.* 3 f.
Nimble, *Agilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Noble, *Nobilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 a.
A Nobleman, *Heros, ois.* 3 m.
Nobly, *Fortiter.* adv.
No body, *Nemo*, gen. caret. dat. *ini*, 3 com. 2.
A noiſe, *Strepitus, us.* 4 m.
A noiſe, *Clangor, oris.* 3 m.
Nones, *Nonæ, arum* plu. 1 f.
No, with a ſubſt. *Nullus, a, um, ius.* adj.
No one, *Nullus, a, um, ius.*
No man, *Nemo*, gen. car. dat. *mini*, 3 com 2.
None, *Nullus, a, um, ius.*
A Noſe, *Naſus, i.* 2 m.
Not, *Non.* adv.
Not at all, *Non omnino*, adv.
Notwithſtanding, *Veruntamen.* conj.
Nothing, *Nihil.* n. s. indec.
Nothing, *Nihilum.* 2 n.
A Nouriſher, *Alitor, oris.* 3 m.
Nouriſhment, *Alimentum, i.* 2 n.
Now, *Nunc.* adv.
Now and then, *Identidem* adv.
Number, *Numerus, i.* 2 m.
Numerous, *Numeroſus, a, um.*
A Nurſe, *Nutrix, icis.* 3 f.
A Nut, *Nux, ucis.* 3 f.

O.

AN Oak, *quercus, us.* 4 f.
Obedience, *Obedientia, æ.* 1 f.
Obedient, *Moriger, a, um.* adj.
To obey, *Obtempero, as, avi.* 1 act.
To obſerve, *Obſervo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To obſerve or regard, *Curo, as, avi* 1 act.
Obſervation, *Obſervatio, onis.* 3 f.
Obſtinacy, *Contumacia, æ.* 1 f.
Obſtinate, *Contumax, acis* adj. 3 art.
To obtain, *Aſſequor, eris, utus.* 3 dep.
Occaſion, *Occaſio, onis.* 3 f.
Odiouſneſs, *Deteſtabilitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Of, *De.* præp. abl.
Off to be, *Diſto, as, ſtiti.* 1 n.
To offend, *Pecco, as, avi.* 1 n.
To offend, *Provoco, as, avi.* 1 act.
An Offender, *Delinquens, tis.* 3 com. 2.
An Offence, *Delictum, i.* 2 n.
An offer, *Conditio, onis.* 3 f.
To offer, *offero, ers, obtuli* irr. 3.
Off-ſpring, *Proles, is.* 3 f.
Often, Oftentimes, } *Sæpe.* adv.
Ointment, *Unguentum, i.* 2 n.

Old,

Old, *Senior, nius, oris.* adj. 3 art.
Old age, *Senecta, æ.* 1 f.
Omnipotency, *Omnipotentia, æ.* 1 f.
Once, *Semel.* adv.
One, *Unus, a, um.* adj.
On each ſide, *Utrinque.* adv.
Only, with a ſubſt *Unicus, a, um.* adj.
Only, *Solummodo.* adv.
To open, *Aperio, is, ui* 4 a.
Opportunity, *Opportunitas, tatis.* 3 f.
To oppoſe, *Repugno, as, avi.* 1 a.
An Oracle, *Oraculum, i.* 2 n.
An Oratour, *Orator, oris.* 3 m.
Order, *Ordo, nis.* 3 f.
Oreſtes, is. 3 m.
An Ornament, *Ornamentum, i.* 2 n.
Orthodox, *Orthodoxus, a, um.* adj.
Other, *Alius, a, ud, ius.* adj.
Others, *Alii, æ, a.* plu.
Otherwiſe, *Aliàs.* adv.
To overcome, *Vinco, is, ici.* 3 act.
To overflow, *Inundo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Over-fond, *Indulgens, tis.* adj. 3 art.
Over-haſty, *Præproperus, a, um.* adj.
Over-love, *Indulgentia, æ.* 1 f.
To over-ſpread, *Permano, as, avi.* 1 act.
To offend, *Lædo, is, ſi.* 3 a.
To over-joy, *Gaudeo, es, viſus.* 2 n. p.
The overthrow, *Ruina, æ* 1 f.
Ovid, *Ovidius, ii.* 2 m.
Ought, *Debet.* imperſ.
Ought, *Oportet.* imperſ.
Our, Our own, *Noſter, a, um.* pron.
To outgo, *Exſupero, as, avi.* 1 act.
To owe, *Debeo, es, ui.* 2 n.
An Owner, *Dominus, i.* 2 m.
An Ox, *Bos, vis.* 3 com. 2.
Oxford, *Oxonium, ii.* 2 n.
Oyl, *Oleum, ii.* 2 n.

P.

PAganiſm, *Ethniciſmus, i.* 2 m.
To paint, *Pingo, is, xi.* 3 a.
A Painter, *Pictor, oris.* 3 m.
Pains, *Labor, oris.* 3 m.
Painful, *Laborioſus, a, um.* adj.
A Palace, *Palatium, ii.* 2 n.
The Palate, *Palatum, i.* 2 n.
Pale, *Pallidus, a, um.* adj.
Paleneſs, *Pallor, oris.* 3 m.
Papal, *Papalis, e, lis.* adj 3 art.
Paper, *Charta, æ.* 1 f.
Pardon, *Venia, æ.* 1 f.
To pardon a Perſon, *Ignoſco, is, ovi.* 3 a.
To pardon a Crime, *Remitto, is, ſi.* 3 a.
A Parent, *Parens, tis.* 3 com. 3.
Paris, *Lutetia, æ.* 1 f.
A Parlour, *Conclave, is.* 3 n.
Parnaſſus, *Parnaſſus, i* 2 m.
A Parrot,

A Parrot, *Pſittacus, i.* 2 m.
A Part, *Pars, tis.* 3 f.
A Part or Leſſon, *Prælectio, onis.* 3 f.
For the moſt part, *Plerumque,* adv.
To paſs, *Prætereo, is, ivi.* 4 n.
To paſs by, *Remitto, is, miſi.* 3 ac.
A Paſſenger, *Vector, oris.* 3 m.
Paſt, *Præteritus, a, um.* adj.
To patch, *Sarcio, is, ivi.* 4 ac.
A Path, *Semita, æ.* 1 f.
Patience, *Patientia, æ.* 1 f.
Patiently, *Patienter,* adv.
A Patron, *Patronus, i.* 2 m.
Paul, *Paulus, i.* 2 m.
To pay, *Solvo, is, vi.* 3 ac.
Peace, *Pax, cis.* 3 f.
A Pear, *Pyrum, i.* 2 n.
A Pebble-ſtone, *Lapillus, i.* 2m
A Piece, *Particula, æ.* 1 f.
A Pencil, *Penicillus, i.* 2 m.
To pierce, *Penetro, as, avi* 1 a.
To pity, *Miſereor, ris, tus.*
Placable, *Placabilis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
Penitent, *Pœnitens, tis.* adj.
To preſcribe, *Præſcribo, is, pſi.*
Penknife, *Scalpellum, i.* 2 n.
A Penny, *Denarius, ii.* 2 m.
The People, *Populus, i.* 2 m.
A Perſecutor, *Perſecutor, oris.* 3 m.
Perception, *Acumen, inis.* 3 n.
Perception, *Sagacitas, tis.* 3 f.
Perfect, *Sincerus, a, um.* adj.
To perform, *Perago, is, egi.* 3 a.
To perform, *Præſto, as, ſtiti.* 1 a.
A Perfume, *Odoramentum, i.* 2 n.
To periſh, *Pereo, is, ii,* & *ivi.* 4 n.
Pernicious, *Exitialis, e, lis.* a.
Perpetually, *Perpetuo.* adv.
Perſepolis, *is.* 3 f.
Perſia, *Perſis, idis.* 3 f.
Perſuaſion, *Suaſus, us.* 4 m.
To perſuade, *Suadeo, is, ſi.* 2 ac.
To be perſuaded, *Moveor, eris, motus.* 2 p.
Perverſe, *Protervus, a, um.* adj.
Peſtilence, *Peſtis, is.* 3 f.
Philip, *Philippus, i.* 2 m.
A Philoſopher, *Philoſophus, i.* 2 m.
Phocis, *idos.* 3 f.
A Phraſe, *Phraſis, is.* 3 f.
Phyſick, *Ars medica.* 3 f.
A Phyſician, *Medicus, i.* 2 m.
A Picture, *Imago, inis.* 3 f.
A Pebble, *Calculus, i.* 2 m.
Piety, *Pietas, tatis.* 3 f.
A Pillar, *Columna, æ.* 1 f.
Pious, *Pius, a, um.* adj.
Piouſly, *Sanctè.* adv.
A Piper, *Tibicen, inis.* 3 m.
A Portion, *Dos, tis.* 3 f.
Pythagoras, *Pythagoras, æ.* 1 m.
A Place, *Locus, i.* 2 pl. m. & n.
To give place, *Cedo, is, ſſi.* 3 n.
The Plague, *Peſtis, is.* 3 f.
To plain, *Dolo, as, avi.* 1 ac.
A Planet, *Planeta, æ.* 1 m.
To plant, *Sero, is, vi.* 3 act.

Planted,

planted, *plantatus, a, um.* adj.
To play, *ludo, is, ſi.* 3 ac.
Plain, *planus, a, um.* adj.
A play-fellow, *Colluſor, oris.* 3 m.
Pleaſant, *jucundus, a, um.* adj.
Pleaſantly, *amœne.* adv.
To pleaſe, *placeo, es, ui,* & *placitus.* 2 n. p.
Pleaſeth, *placet.* imp.
Pleaſure, *voluptas, tatis.* 3 f.
To plead, *ago, is, egi.* 3 act.
Plenty, *Copia, æ.* 1 f.
A pledge, *pignus, oris.* 3 n.
A Poet, *Poeta, æ.* 1 m.
To poiſon, *Venено, as, avi.* 1 act.
To plow, *Aro, as, avi.* 1 act.
Plowed, *Aratus, a, um.* par.
A plowman, *Arator, is.* 3 m.
To pluck, *Vello, is, vulſi.* 3 act.
to pluck down, *Evello, is, ulſi.* 3 act.
A plum, *prunum, i.* 2 n.
A pocket, *Saccellus, i.* 2 m.
A pole, *polus i.* 2 m.
policy, *caliditas, tatis.* 3 f.
Poiſonous, *Venenoſus, a, um.* adj.
A politician, *politicus, i.* 2 m.
Poor, *pauper, ris.* adj. 3 art.
Poor with a ſubſt. *Egenus, a, um.* adj.
Poliſhed, *politus, a, um.* part.
Porridge, *Juſculum, i.* 2 n.
Potent, *potens, tis.* 3 act. & part.
Poverty, *paupertas, tatis.* 3 f.
A pound of money, *Mina,* 1 f.
A pound weight, *libra, æ.* 1
Power, *poteſtas, tatis.* 3 f.
Practice, *Exercitium, ii.* 2 n.
to practiſe, *Ago, is, egi.* 3 act
to practiſe vice, *patro, avi.* 1 act.
Praiſe, *laus, dis.* 3 f.
Praiſe worthy, *Laudabilis, lis.* adj. 3 art.
to praiſe, *Laudo, as, avi.* act.
to be praiſed, *Laudor, atus.* 1 paſſ.
a pratler, *Garrulus, i.* 2 m.
to pray, *precor, aris, atus.* dep.
Prayer, *Preces, cum.* 3 plu.
to preach, *Concionor, atus.* 1 dep.
a preacher, *Concionator,* 3 m.
a precept, *præceptum, i.* 2 n.
to prefer, *Antefero, ers,* 3 irr.
to be preferred, *præponendus a, dum.* part.
Prejudicial, *incommodus, a, um* adj.
to prejudice, *Lædo, is, ſi.* 3 act
Preparation, *Paratus, us.* 4 m
to prepare, *Paro, as, avi.* 1 act
a preſage, *Præſagium, ii.* 2 n.
the preſence, *Præſentia, æ.* 1
Preſent, *præſens, tis.* adj. 3 art
Preſently, *Statim.* adv.
Preſervation, *Conſervatio,* 3 f.

to preſerve, *Conſervo, as, avi.* 2 act.
to preſerve, *Tueor, eris, itus.* 2 dep.
to preſs, *Premo, is, ſſi.* 3 act.
Pretence, *Prætextus, us.* 4 m.
Pretended, *ſimulatus, a, um.* particip.
Pretty, *Bellus, a, um.* adj.
Precious, *Pretioſus, a, ſum.* adj.
to prevent, *Præverto, is, ti.* 3 act.
Price, *pretium, ii.* 2 n.
to prick, *pungo, is, xi.* 3 a.
Pride, *Superbia, æ.* 1 f.
a Prince, *Princeps, ipis.* 3 com. 2.
Princely, *Regius, a, um.* adj.
A Printer, *Typographus, i.* 2 m.
Printed, *impreſſus, a, um.* part.
Priſon, *ergaſtulum, i.* 2 n.
to be prized, *æſtimor, aris, atus.* 1 paſſi.
Private, *arcanus, a, um.* adj.
Privately, *privatè.* adv.
a privilege, *privilegium, ii.* 2 n.
to prize, *æſtimo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Probable, *probabilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
to proceed, *prior, eris,* & *iris, orſus* dep.
to proceed, *provenio, is, ni.* 4 n.
to procure, *paro, as, avi.* 1 act.
Prodigal, *prodigus, a, um.* adj.
Prodigality, *luxuria, æ.* 1 f.
Prodigy, *prodigium, ii.* 2 n.
to produce, *effero, ers, extuli.* 3 act.
Profeſſed, *profeſſus, a, um.* adj.
Proficience, *profectus, us.* 4 m.
Profit, *utilitas, tatis.* 3 f.
to profit, *proſum, es, ui.*
Profitable, *utilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
a promiſe, *promiſſum, i.* 2 n.
to promiſe, *promitto, is, iſi.* 3 act.
promis'd, *promiſſus, a, um.* part.
to promote, *promoveo, es, vi.* 2 act.
to prompt, *incito, as, avi.* 1 act.
to prop, *fulcio, is, ſi.* 4 act.
Proper, *proprius, a, um.* adj.
Property, *proprietas, tatis.* 3 f.
Prophane, *prophanus, a, um.* adj.
to propound, *propono, is, ſui.* 3 act.
Proſperity, *res proſpera.* 5 f.
to proſper, *ſecundo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Proſperous, *ſecundus, a, dum.* adj.
Proud, *ſuperbus, a, um.* adj.
Proudly, *ſuperbe.* adv.
Provender, *pabulum, i.* 2 n.
to provide, *paro, as, avi.* 1 act.
Providence, *providentia, æ.* 1 f.
Provident, *providus, a, um.*
a Province, *provincia, æ.* 1 f.
to provoke, *incito, as, avi.* 1 act.

Prudence, *Prudentia, æ.* 1 f.
Publick, *Publicus, a, um.* adj.
To pull, *Vello, es, ulſi.* 3 act.
To pull down, *Evello, es, ulſi.* 3 ibid.
To pull down Kings, *Solio deturbo, as, avi.*
To puniſh, *Punio, is, ivi.* 4 act.
Puniſhment, *Pœna, æ.* 1 f.
To purchaſe, *Emo, is, mi.* 3 act.
To purchaſe, *Acquiro, is, ſivi.* 3 act.
A Purſe, *Crumena, æ.* 1 f.
Pure, *Purus, a, um.* adj.
To purpoſe, *Statuo, is, ui.* 3 act.
To put forth, *Exero, is, ui.* 3 act.
To put on, *Induo, is, ui.* 3 act.
To put over, *Superinduo, is, dui.* 3 act.
To put under, *Suppono, is, ſui.* 3 act.
Pylades, *Pylades, um.* 3 [illegible]

Q.

TO quake, *Tremo, is, ui.* 3 n.
A Quarrel, *Jurgium, ii.* 2 n.
Quickly, *Statim.* adv.
Quiet, *Tranquillus, a, um.* adj.
Quietly, *Quiete.* adv.
Quietneſs, *Tranquilitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Quickſand, *Syrtes, is.* 3 f.
A Quill, *Calamus, i.* 2 m.
Quite, *Prorſus.* adv.

R.

RAce or Family, *Origo, inis.* 3 f.
Racks, *Fidiculæ, arum.* 1 plu. f.
Rage, *Impetus, us.* 4 m.
To rage, *Furio, is, inſanivi.* 3 neut.
Raging, *Furens, tis.* part. 3 act.
Rain, *Pluvia, æ.* 1 f.
To raiſe, *Incendo, is, di.* 3 act.
Rare, *Rarus, a, um.* adj.
Raſh, *Temerarius, a, um.* adj.
Raſhneſs, *Temeritas, tatis.* 3 f.
A Rate, *Pretium, ii.* 2 n.
To rattle, *Increpo, as, avi.*
Rather, *Potius.* adv.
A Raven, *Corvus, i.* 2 m.
A Razor, *Novacula, æ.* 1 f.
To have rather, *Malo, is, ui.* irr.
To rattle, *Crepito, as, avi.* 1 neut.
To read, *Lego, is, gi.* 3 act.
To read over again, *Relego, is, egi.* 3 act.
Reading, *Lectio, onis.* 3 f.
Ready, *Promptus, a, um.* adj.
Ready, *Paratus, a, um.* adj.
Really, *Revera.* adv.
To reap, *Meto, is, ſui.* 3 act.
A Reaper, *Meſſor, oris.* 3 m.
A Reaping-hook, *Falx, cis.* 3 f.
A Reaſon, *Cauſa, æ.* 1 f.
Reaſon, *Ratio, onis.* 3 f.
To reaſon, *Diſcepto, as, avi.* 3 f.
A Rebel, *Rebellis, is.* 3 f.
To rebel, *Repugno, as, avi.* 1 act.

Rebellious, *Pervicax, acis.* adj. 3 art.
To recal, *Revoco, as, avi.* 1 act.
To receive, *Accipo, is, epi.* 3 act.
To receive, *Recipio, is, epi.* 3 act.
To reckon, *Habeo, es, ui.* 2 a.
A Recompence, *Compenſatio, onis.* 3 f.
To recompence, *Penſo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Recovering, *Recuperatio, onis.* 3 f.
Recreation, *Luſus, us.* 4 m.
A Receipt, *Receptio, onis.* 3 f.
To recreate, *Recreo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Red, *Ruber, a, um.* adj.
To redeem, *Redimo, is, emi* 3 act.
A Redeemer, *Redemptor, oris.* 3 m.
To reduce, *Reduco, is, xi.* 3 act.
To reduce, *Adigo, is, egi.* 3 act.
To reel round, *Glomero, as, avi* 1 n.
To reel or ſtagger, *Vacillo, as, avi.* 1 n.
A Refreſher, *Refocillator, oris.* 3 m.
A Refreſhment, *Refectio, onis.* 3 f.
A Refuſal, *Repulſa, æ.* 1 f.
To refuſe, *Recuſo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To refute, *Refello, is, i.* 3 c. a.
To regain, *Redimo, is, emi.* 3 act.
To regard, *Curo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To reign, *Regno, as, avi.* 1 n.
Reins, *Fræna, orum.* 2 plu. n.
To rejoice, *Exhilaro, as, avi.* 1 act.
To rejoice, *Gaudeo, es, viſus.* 2 n. p.
Religion, *Religio, onis.* 3 f.
To rely, *Nitor, eris, nixus.* 3 d.
Relying upon, *Fretus, a, um.* adj.
To remain, *Permaneo, es, ſi.* 2 n.
A Remedy, *Medicina, æ.* 1 f.
Remedy, *Remedium, ii.* 2 n.
Remembrance, *Memoria, æ.* 1 f.
To remember, *Reminiſcor, eris, recordatus.* 3 d.
Remiſſion, *Remiſſio, onis.* 3 f.
Remote, *Remotus, a, um.* part.
To remove, *Moveo, es, vi.* 2 act.
To render, *Reddo, is, didi,* 3 act.
To renew, *Renovo, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Rent, *Fiſſura, æ.* 1 f.
A Repairer, *Refectrix, icis.* 3 f.
To repair, *Redintegro, as, avi.* 1 act.
To repay, *Reſolvo, is, vi.* 3 act.
To repeat, *Inculco, as, avi.* 1 act.
Repeated, *Repetitus, a, um.* part.
Repentance, *Pœnitentia, æ.* 1 f.
It repenteth, *Pœnitet.* imp.

A Report, *Fama, æ.* 1 f.
Reprehenſory, *Culpabilis, lis, lis.* adj.
Reproof, *Reprehenſio, onis.* 3 f.
To reprove, *Arguo, is, ui.* 2 act.
Reputation, *Fama bona.* 1 f.
To requeſt, *Peto, is, ii, ivi.* 3 act.
To require, *Poſtulo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To reſiſt, *Repugno, as, avi.* 1 act.
To reſolve, *Statuo, is, ui.* 3 act.
To be reſolved on, *ſtat,* imp.
Reſolvedly, *Obſtinate.* adv.
Reſt, *Quies, etis.* 3 f.
To reſt, *Quieſco, is, evi* 3 n.
To reſtore, *Reddo, is, didi* 3 act.
To reſtrain, *Inhibeo, es, ui.* 2 act.
To retain, *Retineo, es, ui.* 2 act.
A return, *Reditus, us.* 4 m.
To return, *Reddo, is, didi.* 3 act.
To return, *Redeo, is, ivi.* 4 n.
To reveal, *Patefacio, is, eci.* 3 act.
To revenge, *Ulciſcor, eris, ultus.* 3 d.
Reverence, *Reverentia, æ.* 1 f.
To reverence, *Veneror, aris, atus.* 1 d.
To be reviled, *Exprobror, aris, atus.* 1 poſſ.
Reward, *Merces, dis.* 3 f.
To reward, *Munero, as, avi.* 1 act.
Rich, *Dives, tis.* adj. 3 a.
Riches, *Divitiæ, arum.* 1 plu.f.
Ridiculous, *Ridendus, a, um.* part.
Right, *Jus, uris.* 3 n.
Rightly, *Rectè.* adv.
Righteouſneſs, *Juſtitia, æ.* 1 f.
Righteous, *Juſtus, a, um.* adj.
Righteouſly or Juſtly, *Juſtè.* adv.
A Ring, *Annulus, i.* 2 m.
Ripeneſs, *Maturitas, tatis.* 3 f.
To riſe with brightneſs, *Orior, iris, ortus.* 3 dep.
To riſe, *Surgo, is, rexi.* 3 act.
A River, *Amnis, is.* 3 m.
The Road, *Trames, itis.* 3 m.
Roaring of a Lion, *Rugitus, us.* 4 m.
To rob, *Spolio, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Robe, *Palla, æ.* 1 f.
A Rock, *Petra, æ.* 1 f.
A Rod, *Virga, æ.* 1 f.
Rome, *Roma, æ.* 1 f.
Romans, *Romani, orum.* 2 m. plu.
To root out, *Eradico, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Roſe, *Roſa, æ.* 1 f.
Rough, *Aſper, a um.* adj.
To roul, *Volvo, is, vi.* 3 act.
Rowling, *Volubilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Royal, *Regalis, e, lis.* adj 3 art.
Royalty, *Majeſtas, tatis.* 3 f.
To rub, *Frico, as, ui.* 1 act.
Rugged, *Aſper, a, um.* adj.

Ruin, *Exitium, ii.* 2 n.
A Rule, *Norma, æ.* 1 f.
A Ruler, *Gubernator, oris.* 3 m.
To rule, *Rego, is, exi.* 3 act.
To rule or reign, *Regno, as, avi.* 1 n.
A Rumour, *Rumor, oris.* 3 m.
To run, *Curro, is, cucurri, ſum.* 3 act.
To run headlong, *Ruo, is, ui.* 3 n.
To run away, *Fugio, is, gi* 3 n.
Running, *Currens, tis.* part.
A Ruſh, *Juncus, i.* 2 m.
To ruſh, *Ruo, is, ui.* 3 n.

S.

SAbboth, *Sabbatum, i.* 2 n.
Sabboth-breaking, *Violatio, onis.* f. 3 *Sabbati.*
To ſacrifice, *Immolo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Sacred, *Sacratus, a, um.* adj.
To be ſad, *Mæreo, es, æſtus.* 2 n. p.
A Saddle, *Sella, æ.* 1 f.
Safe, *Tutus, a, um.* adj.
A Safeguard, *Tutela, æ.* 1 f.
Safety, *Incolumitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Sagacious, *Sagax, acis* adj. 3 ar.
A Sail, *Velum, i.* 2 n.
To ſail, *Navigo, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Saint, *Sanctus, i.* 2 m.
The Sake, *Gratia, æ.* 1 f.
For the ſake, *Gratiâ,* abl.
The ſame, *Idem, eadem, idem, ejuſdem.* pron.
The Sand, *Arena, æ.* 1 f.
To ſatisfy, *Satisfacio, is, eci,* 3 act.
To ſatisfy, *Satio, as, avi.* 1 act.
Sauce, *Condimentum, i.* 2 n.
Saucy, *Petulans, antis.* adj. 3 art.
A Saviour, *Salvator, oris.* 3 m.
A Saw, *Serra, æ.* 1 f.
Saucineſs, *Procacitas, atis.* 3 f.
To ſay, *Dico, cis, xi.* 3 act.
To ſay a Leſſon, *Repeto, is, ii, vi.* 3 act.
A Scabbard, *Vagina, æ.* 2 f.
Scarcely, *Vix,* adv.
A Scent, *Odor, oris.* 3 m.
A Scepter, *Sceptrum, i.* 2 n.
A Scholar, *Diſcipulus, i.* 2 m.
Scholaſtick, *Scholaſticus, a, um.* adj.
A School, *Schola, æ.* 1 f.
A Schoolfellow, *Condiſcipulus, i.* 2 m.
A Schoolmaſter, *Præceptor, oris.* 3 m.
To ſchool, *Increpo, as, ui.* 1 act.
Scorching, *Torridus, a, um.* adj.
To ſcorn, *Temno, is, pſi.* 3 act.
Scornful, *Faſtidioſus, a, um.* adj.
To ſcratch, *Scalpo, is, pſi.* 3 act.
To ſcrape, *Scalpo, is, pſi.* 3 a.
A Scrivener, *Scriba, æ.* 1 m.
A Scyth, *Falx, cis.* 3 f.
The Sea, *Mare, is.* 3 n.
A Seaman, *Nauta, æ.* 1 m.
To ſearch out, *Rimor, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
Seas, *Undæ, arum.* 1 plu. f.

Seaſon, *Occaſio, onis.* 3 f.
A Seat, *Sedes, is.* 3 n.
The ſecond, *Secundus, a, um.* adj.
The ſecond time, *Rurſus*, adv.
Secrecy, *Taciturnitas, tatis.* 3 f.
A Secret, *Arcanum, i.* 2 n.
Secretly, *Secretè.* adv.
Security, *Tutamen, inis.* 3 n.
To ſee, *Video, es, idi.* 2 act.
Seed, *Semen, inis.* 3 n.
To ſeek, *Quæro, is, ſivi.* 3 act.
To ſeek, *Perſequor, eris, cutus.* 3 dep.
To ſeem, *Videor, eris, viſus.* 2 p.
To ſeize, *Occupo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Seldom, *Rarò.* adv.
Self, *Ipſe, ipſa, ipſum.* pron.
Self-murther, *Suicidium, ii.* 2 n.
To ſell, *Vendo, is, didi.* 3 act.
Selves, *Ipſi.* pron. plu.
To ſend, *Mitto, is, ſi.* 3 act.
The Senſes, *Senſus, us.* 4 plu. m.
Senſitive, *Senſitivus, a, um.* adj.
A Sentence, *Sententia, æ.* 1 f.
To ſeparate, *Separo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Serious, *Seriùs.* adv.
A Sermon, *Concio, onis.* 3 m.
Serpent, *Serpens, tis.* 3 com. 2.
A Servant, *Servus, i.* 2 m.
To ſerve, *Servio, is, ivi.* 4 n.
Service, *Servitus, us.* 4 m.
The Service of God, *Cultus, us.* 4 m.
To ſet, *Pono, nis, ſui.* 3 act.
Setled, *Stabilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
To ſet up, *Conſtituo, is, ui.* 3 act.
Seventy, *Septuaginta*, adj. plu. indecl.
Seventy five, *Septuaginta quinque*, indecl.
Severe, *Severus, a, um.* adj.
Severity, *Severitas, tatis.* 1 f.
A Shade, *Umbra, æ.* 3 f.
To ſhake off, *Excutio, is, uſſi.* 3 act.
Shame, *Pudor, oris.* 3 m.
Shape, *Forma, æ.* 1 f.
Sharp, *Acer, cris, cre.* adj. 3 art.
Sharpneſs, *Aciditas, tatis.* 3 f.
Sharpning, *Acuens, entis.* part. 3 act.
To ſhade, *Obumbro, as, avi.* 1 act.
To ſhave, *Rado, is, ſi.* 3 act.
To ſhed, *Effundo, is, udi.* 3 act.
A Shew, *Species, iei.* 5 f.
A Shilling, *Solidus, i.* 2 m.
To ſhine upon, *Affulgeo, ei, ſi* 2 n.
To ſhine, *Splendeo, es, ui.* neut.
Shining, *Splendor, oris.* 3 m.
A Ship, *Navis, is.* 3 f.
A Sheep, *Ovis, is.* 3 f.

A Shooe, *Calceus, i.* 2 m.
A Shooemaker, *Calcearius, ii.* 2 n.
A Shop, *Officina, æ.* 1 f.
Short, *Brevis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
A Shout, *Plauſus, us.* 4 m.
To ſhow, *Monſtruo, as, avi.* act.
To ſhow, *Indico, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Shower, *Imber, bris.* 3 m.
To ſhun, *Fugio, is, gi.* 3 act.
To ſhut, *Claudo, dis, ſi.* 3 a.
Sickly, *Valetudinarius, a, um.* adj.
A Sickle, *Salcula, æ.* 1 f.
Sickneſs, *Ægritudo, inis.* 3 f.
A Sick Perſon, *Æger, i.* 2 m.
A Side, *Latus, eris.* 3 neut.
A Sieve, *Cribrum, i.* 3 n.
The Sight, *Conſpectus, us.* 4 m.
A Sign or Token, *Indicium, ii.* 2 n.
A Sign, *Signum, i.* 2 n.
Silly, *Inſulſus, a, um.* adj.
Silence, *Silentium, ii.* 2 n.
Silent, *Tacitus, a, um.* adj.
A Sinner, *Peccator, oris.* 3 m.
Sin, *Peccatum, i.* 2 n.
To ſin, *Pecco, as, avi.* 1 n.
Sinful, *Peccaminoſus, a, um.* adj.
To ſing, *Cano, is, cecini.* 3 act.
Sincerity, *Sinceritas, tatis.* 3 f.
Sir, *Dominus, i.* 2 m.
Siſter, *Soror, oris.* 3 f.
To ſit, *Sedeo, es, di* 2 n.
Six, *Sex.* plu. indec. adj.
Sixth, *Sextus, a, um.* adj.
Six thouſand, *Sexies mille.*
Skilful, *Peritus, a, um.* adj.
Slack, *Tardus, a, um.* adj.
To be ſlain, *Perimor, eris, emptus.* 3 paſſ.
A Slave, *Servus, i.* 2 m.
To ſlay, *Perimo, is, emi.* 3 act.
Sleep, *Somnus, i.* 2 m.
To ſleep, *Dormio, is, ivi.* 4 n.
To ſlide, *Labor, eris, plus.* 3 d.
To ſlight, *Aſpernor, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
Sluggiſh, *Ignavus, a, um.* adj.
Sloth, *Pigritia, æ.* 1 f.
Slothful, *Piger, a, um.* adj.
Sloven, *Squalidus, a, um.* adj.
Slow, *Tardus, a, um.* adj.
Slowly, *Tarde.* adv.
A Sluggard, *Dormitor, oris.* 3 m.
Small, *Exiguus, a, um.* adj.
To ſmell of, *Oleo, es, ui,* & *evi.* 2 n.
A Smile, *Subriſio, onis.* 3 f.
To ſmite, *Percutio, is, uſſi.* 3 act.
A Smith, *Faber, i.* 2 m.
Smooth, *Lævis, e, vis.* adj. 3 art.
Smooth, *Planus, a, um.* adj.
A Snare, *Laqueum, i.* 2 n.
To ſnatch, *Rapio, is, ui.* 3 act.
Snow, *Nix, ivis.* 3 f.
Soberly, *Sobriè.* adv.

Society *Societas, tatis.* 3 f.
So, *Tam,* adv.
So far, *Adeo.* adv.
So great, *Tantus, a, um.*
So greatly, *Tantoperè.* adv.
So much, *Tantum.* adv.
Soever, *Cunque.* conj.
Soft, *Mollis, e, lis.* adj.
Some, *Aliquis, a, quod.* pron. adj.
Some, *Nonnulli, æ, a.* pron. plu.
Some body, *Aliquis, qua, quod, & quid.* pron.
Something, *Aliquid.* pron.
Sometimes, *Aliquando.* adv.
A Son, *Filius, ii.* 2 m.
Soon, *Cito.* adv.
Sordid, *Vilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
A Sort, *Genus, eris.* 3 n.
Sorrowful, *Mœstus, a, um.* part.
A Sovereign, *Rex, egis.* 3 m.
Sought, *Petitus, a, um.* part.
A Soldier, *Miles, itis.* 3 m.
The Soul, *Anima, æ.* 1 f.
Sound, *Sanus, a, um.* adj.
A Sound, *Sonus, i.* 2 m.
To ſound, *Sono, as, avi.* 3 neut.
Sour, *Acidus, a, um.* adj.
Soundly, *Acriter.* adv.
To ſow, *Sero, is, evi.* 3 act.
To ſowe with a Needle, *Suo, is, ui.* 3 n.
A Sow, *Sus, ſuis.* 3 com. 2.
Space, *Spacium ii.* 2 n.
A Spade, *Ligo, onis.* 2 m.
Spain, *Hiſpania, æ.* 1 f.
To ſpare, *Parco, is, peperci.* 3 act.
A Spark, *Scintilla, æ.* 1 f.
To ſpeak, *Loquor, eris, utus.* 3 act.
To ſpeak againſt, *Contradico, is, ixi.* act.
Speaking, *Sermo, onis.* 3 m.
Speed, *Celeritas, tatis.* 3 f.
With all ſpeed, *Celerrimè.* adv.
To ſpend, *Impendo, is, di.* 3 act.
Spent, *Impenſus, a, um.* part.
The Spirit, *Animus, i.* 2 m.
Splendor, *oris.* 3 m.
To ſpin, *Neo, es, evi.* 2 act.
A Spirit, *Spiritus, us.* 4 m.
Spiritual, *Spiritualis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
Splendid, *Splendidus, a, um.* adj.
To ſpoil, *Spolio, as, avi.* 1 act
A Spout, *Epiſtomium, ii.* 2 n.
Sprightly, *Alacer, cris, cre.* adj.
A Spring, *Scaturigo, inis.* 3 f.
To ſpring, *Orior, riris, ortus.* 4 dep.
To ſprout, *Germino, as avi.* 1 act.
The Spring, *Ver, eris.* 3 n.
Sprung, *Ortus, a, um* part.
A Spur, *Calcar, aris.* 3 n.
A Squirrel, *Sciurus, i.* 2 m.
To ſtab, *Jugulo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Stable, *Stabilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.

A Stag,

A Stage, *Cervus, i.* 2 m.
To ſtand, *Sto, as, teti.* 1 n.
To ſtand before, *Anteſto, as, iti.* 1 n.
To ſtand as a City, *Jaceo, es, ui.* 2 n.
Standing, *Stans, tis.* part. 3 art.
A Star, *Stella, æ.* 1 f.
To ſtart, *Expaveſco, ei, ui.* incep 3.
A Staff, *Baculum, i.* 2 n.
A Stateſman, *Politicus, i.* 2 m.
To ſtay, *Maneo, es, ſi.* 2 n.
To ſtarve, *Fame eneco, as, ui.* 1 act.
To ſteal, *Furor, aris, atus* 1 d.
To ſtay away, *Abſum, es, fui.* irr.
A Stick, *Baculus, i.* 2 m.
Stedfaſt, *Firmus, a, um.* adj.
Stedfaſtly, *Firme.* adv.
Stedfaſtneſs, *Firmitas, tatis.* 3 f.
A Sting, *Aculeus, i.* 2 m.
Stinking, *Fœtidus, a, um.* adj.
Still, *Adhuc.* adv.
To ſting, *Pungo, is, pupugi, & punxi.* 3 act.
To ſtir up, *Incito, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Stone, *Lapis, idis.* 3 m.
A Stomach, *Stomachus, i* 2 m.
A Storm, *Procella, æ.* 1 f.
A Story, *Fabula, æ.* 1 f.
Stout, *Validus, a, um.*
To ſtop, *Siſto, is, ſtiti.* 3 a.
A Stranger, *Peregrinus, i.* 2 m.
A Store-houſe, *Cella, æ,* 1 f.
Straw, *Stramen, inis.* 3 n.
A Stream, *Torrens, tis.* 3 m.
A Street, *Platea, æ.* 1 f.
Streight, *Rectus, a, um.* adj.
Strange, *Mirus, a, um.* adj.
A Stratagem, *Machina, æ.* 1 f.
Strength, *Vis, vis.* 3 f.
To ſtrengthen, *Animo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To ſtrike, *Percutio, is, cuſſi.* 3 act.
To ſtrike as a Clock, *Sono, as, ui.* 1 n.
Stripes, *Plagæ, arum.* 1 plu. f.
To ſtrive, *Certo, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Stroke, *Ictus, us.* 4 m.
Strong, *Fortis, e, tis.* adj. 3 art.
Stubborn, *Contumax, acis.* adj. 3 art.
Study, *Studium, ii.* 2 n.
To ſtudy, *Studeo, es, ui.* 2 n.
Studious, *Studioſus, a, um.* adj.
To ſtuff, *Farcio, is, ſi.* 4 act.
Stupid, *Stupidus, a, um.* adj.
To ſubdue, *Subigo, is, egi.* 3 act.
Subject, *Subditus, a, um.* adj.
A Subject, *Subjectus, us.* 4 m.
To ſubmit, *Submitto, is, ſi.* 3 act.
Submitting, *Supplex, icis.* adj. 2 art.
Subſtance, *Res, ei.* 5 f.
Subtile, *Aſtutus, a, um.* adj.
Subtilty, *Aſtutia, æ.* 1 f.

To ſtroak, *Demulceo, es, ſi.* 2 act.
To except, *Excipio, is, epi.* 3 act.
Succeeding, *Secundatus, a, um.* part.
Succeſs, *Succeſſus, us.* 4 m.
To ſuccour, *Opitulor, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
Such an one, *Talis, e, lis.* adj
Suddenly, *Repentè.* adv.
Such, *Talis, e, lis.* adj.
Sudden, *Subitus, a, um.* adj.
To ſuffer, *Sino, is, ivi.* 3 act.
To ſuffer, *Patior, eris, paſſus.* 3 dep.
To ſuffer, *Subeo, es, ivi.* 4 n.
Sufferings, *Mala, orum.* plu 2
Sufficient, *Sufficiens, tis.* adj. 3 art.
Sufficiently, *Satis.* adv.
Sulphureous, *Sulphureus, a, um.* adj.
Summer, *Æſtas, atis.* 3 f.
The Sun *Sol, olis.* 3 m.
To ſup, *Cano, as, avi, & atus.* 1 n. p.
A Supper, *Cœna, æ.* 1 f.
A Suppliant, *Supplex, icis* 3 m.
To ſupply, *Suppedito, as, avi.* 1 act.
To ſupply, *Occulto, as, avi.* 1 act.
Sure, *Certus, a, um.* adj.
To ſurrender, *Dedo, is, didi.* 3 act.
To ſurvive, *Superſum, es, fui.* irr. comp.
To ſwear, *Juro, as, avi, & atus.* 1 act.
Sweet of ſmell, *Suavis, e, vis.* adj. 3 art.
Sweet or pleaſant, *Jucundus, a, um* adj.
To fall in a Swoon, *Langueſco, is, ui.* incept. 3.
Swift, *Velox, cis.* adj. 3 art.
Swiftly, *Velociter.* adv.
Sweat, *Sudor, oris.* 3 m.
Swearing. *Juramentum. i.* 2 n.
Sweet, *Dulciſonus, a, um.* adj.
Sweet, *Blandus, a, um* adj.
Sweetneſs, *Dulcedo, inis.* 3 f.
A Swimmer, *Natator, oris.* 3 m.
A Sword, *Gladius, ii* 2 m.
To fall in a ſwoon, *Langueſco, is, ui.* 3 n.
To ſwim, *Navo, as, avi.* 1 n.
A Swine, *Porcus, i.* 2 m.
Swelling, *Tumidus, a, um.*
The Syrens, *Syrenes.* plu 3 f.

T.

A Table, *Menſa, æ.* 1 f.
To take, *Accipio, is, epi* 3 act.
To take away, *Aufero, ers, abſtuli.* 3 irr. com.
To take care of, *Curo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To take, *Adhibeo, es, ui.* 2 act.
To take from, *Aufero, ers, abſtuli.* irr.
To take notice of, *Obſervo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To take pains, *Laboro, as, avi.* 1 n.

To take to, *Aſſumo, is, pſi.* 3 act.
To take upon Conqueſt, *expugno, as, avi.* 1 a.
To talk, *Confabulor, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
A Tale, *Delatio, onis.* 3 f.
To tame, *Domo, as, ui.* 1 act.
To tarry, *Maneo, es, ſi.* 2 n.
To teach, *Doceo, es, ui.* 2 act.
Taken away, *Ablatus, a, um.* part.
A taking away, *Ablatio, onis.* 3 f.
Taken away, *Ablatus, a um.* part.
A Talk, *Sermo, onis.* 3 m.
Talkativeneſs, *Loquacitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Talking, *Garriens, tis.* part. 3 art.
To tare, *Lacero, as, avi.* 1 act.
Tart, *Severus, a, um.* adj.
A Taylor, *Sartor, oris.* 3 m.
A Teacher, *Doctor, oris.* 3 m.
To tell of, *Annuncio, as, avi.* 1 n.
A Temper, *Ingenium, ii.* 2 n.
Tempeſt, *Tempeſtas, atis* 3 f
A Temple, *Templum, i.* 2 n
Temporal, *Temporalis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Temperance, *Temperantia, æ.* 1 f.
To tempt, *Tento, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Tempter, *Tentator, oris.* 3 m.
A Temptation, *Tentatio, onis.* 3 f.
Tenacious, *Tenax, acis.* adj. 3 art.
A Tenant, *Manceps, ipis.* 3 m.
To tend, *Facio, is, eci.* 3 act.
Tender, *Tener, a, um.* adj.
Terrible, *Terribilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
To teſtify, *Teſtor, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
A Teſtimony, *Teſtimonium, ii* 2 n.
Thais, idis. 3 f.
Thanks, *Gratiæ, arum.* 1 f. plu.
Than, *Quàm.* adv.
That, *Qui, æ, od.* pron. adj.
That, *Quod.* conj.
That, *Iſte, a, ud.* pron. adj.
The former, *Ille, a, ud.* pron. adj
The latter, *Hic* pron.
The one, *Hic* pron.
The other, *Ille.* pron.
A Theme, *Thema, atis.* 3 n.
A Theatre, *Theatrum, i.* 2 n.
Theft, *Furtum, i.* 2 n.
A Thief, *Fur, uris.* 3 com. 2.
Their own, *Suus, a, um.* pron. adj.
From thence, *Inde*, adv.
There are, *Sunt*, from *ſum.* 3 plu.
There is, *Eſt*, from *ſum.* 3 ſing.
Thereby, *Ita* adv.
Therefore, *Igitur.* adv.
They, *Illi*, from *Ille*, pron. plu.
Thick, *Denſus, a, um.* adj.
Thine, *Tuus, a, um.* pron.

To think, *Puto, as, avi.* 1 act.
To think on, *Cogito, as, avi.* 1 act.
Thirſt, *Sitis, is.* 3 f.
To thirſt after, *Sitio, is, ivi.* 4 act.
A Thinking, *Cogitatio, onis.* 3 f.
Thirteen, *Tredecim.* adj. indec.
This, *Hic.* pron.
Thither, *Illuc.* adv.
Though, *Quamvis.* conj.
Throughly, *Penitus.* adv.
Thoſe, *Ille.* pron. adj.
Thou, *Tu.* pron. ſubſt.
Tho', *Etſi.* conj.
A thought, *Cogitatio, onis.* 3 f.
Thouſand times, *Millies.* adv.
To threaten, *Minor, oris, atus.* 1 d.
A Threatning, *Minæ, arum.* 1 f. plu.
Three, *Tres, tria.* plu. adj. 3 arr.
Three hundred, *Trecenti, æ, a.* adj. plu.
Thrifty, *Parcus, a, um* adj.
Thriftineſs, *Frugalitas, tatis.* 3 f.
A Throat, *Guttur, uris.* 3 n.
To throw down, *Deturbo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To thruſt, *Trudo, is, ſi.* 3 act.
Thunder, *Fulmen, inis.* 3 n
To thunder, *Tono, as, ui.* 1 n.
Thine, *Tuus, a, um.*
Till, *Donec.* adv.
Time, *Tempus, oris.* 3 n.
Tired, *Feſſus, a, um.* adj.
A Title Name, *Nomen, inis.* 3 n.
Titus, *Titus, i.* 2 m.
To, *ad.* præp. acc.
Together, *Simul.* adv.
A Token, *Indicium, ii.* 2 n.
The Tongue, *Lingua, æ.* 1 f.
Too much, *Nimium.*
Too great, *Nimium.* adv.
Too late, *Seronimus.* adv.
A Toad, *Bufo, onis.* 3 m.
The Top, *Culmen, inis.* 3 n.
Torment, *Cruciatus, us.* 4 m.
To torment, *Crucio, as, avi.* 1 act.
Torn, *Laceratus, a, um.* adj.
Torture, *Cruciatus, us.* 4 m.
Torrid, *Torridus, a, um.*
To touch, *Tango, is, tetigi.* 3 act.
Towards, *Erga.* præp. acc.
A Town, *Oppidum, i.* 2 n.
A Tower, *Turris,* 3 f.
A Tradeſman, *Mercator, oris.* 3 m.
Traffick, *Commercium, ii.* 2 n.
To traffick, *Negotior, aris, atus.* 1 dep.
Tranquility, *Tranquilitas tatis.* 3 f.
To tranſgreſs, *Erro, as, avi.* 1 act.
A Tranſgreſſion, *Tranſgreſſio, onis.* 3 f.
To tranſlate, *Transfero, ers, tuli.* irr. comp.
A Traveller, *Viator, oris.* 3 m.

To traverſe, *Pervio, as, avi.* 1 act.
Treacherous, *Perfidus, a, um.* adj.
To tread upon, *Calco, as, avi.* 1 act.
Treaſure, *Theſaurus, i.* 2 m.
A Tree, *Arbor, oris.* 3 f.
Trembling, *Trepidus, a, um.* adj.
A Trench, *Vallum, i.* 2 n.
A Trick, *Techna, æ* 1 f.
Trifles, *Tricæ, arum.* 1 plu. f.
To trifle away, *Prodigo, is, egi.* 3 act.
To trim, *Orno, as, avi.* 1 act.
To trot, *Succutio, is, ſſi.* 3 n.
Trouble, *Anxietas, tatis.* 3 f.
To trouble, *Moleſto, as, avi* 1 act.
To be troubled, *Diſcrucior, aris, atus.* 1 p.
A Truant, *Ceſſator, oris* 3 m.
To truant, *Ceſſo, as, avi.* 1 n.
Truanting, *Ceſſatio, onis.* 3 f.
Troubleſome, *Moleſtus, a, um.*
Troy, *Troja, æ.* 1 f.
True, *Verus, a, um.* adj.
Truly, *Sane.* adv.
Trumpet, *Tuba, æ.* 1 f.
Truſt, *Fiducia, æ.* 1 f.
Truſty, *Fidus, a, um.* adj.
To truſt, *Fido, is, ſus ſum* 3 a.
Truth, *Veritas, tatis.* 3 f.
To try, *Experior, iris, ertus.* dep. 4.
To turn, *Converto, is, ti.* 3 act.
Twelve, *Duodecim,* ind. adj. plur.
Twenty, *Viginti.* adj. plu. indec.
Twice, *Bis.* adv.
Two, *Duo.* adj. plu.
Two hundred, *Ducenti, æ, a.* adj. plu.
Tyger, *Tygris, ris.* 1 f.
A Tyrant, *Tyrannus, i* 2 m.
To tire, *Fatigo, as, avi.* 1 act.

V

VAin, *Inanis, e, is.* adj. 3 art.
In vain, *Fruſtrà.* adv.
Vainly, *Vane.* adv.
Valiant, *Magnanimus, a, um.* adj.
Valiantly, *Fortiter.* adv.
A Valley, *Vallis, is.* 3 f.
Valour, *Fortitudo, inis.* 3 f.
To value, *Æſtimo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Vanity, *Nugæ, arum.* 1 pl. f.
Vanity, *Vanitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Various, *Varius, a, um.* adj.
Vehemently, *Vehementer.* adv.
A Verſe, *Verſus, us.* 4 m.
Virtue, *Virtus, tutis* 3 f.
Virtuous, *Pius, a, um.* adj.
Very, *Valde.* adv.
Very ill, *Peſſime.* adv.
Very much, *Maxime.* adv.
Veſpaſian, *Veſpaſianus, i.* 2 m.
To vex, *Ango, is, xi.* 3 act.
A Vexation, *Vexatio, onis.* 3 f.
Ugly, *Turpis, e, is, deformis, e, is.* adj 3 art.
Vice, *Vitium, ii.* 2 n.
Victory, *Victoria, æ.* 1 f.
Victorious, *Victoriosus, a, um.*

Victorious, *Victorioſus, a, um.* adj.
Vile, *vilis, e, lis,* ad. 3 art.
Villany, *nequitia, æ.* 1 f.
To vindicate, *vindico, as, avi.* 1 act.
Vinegar, *acetum, i,* 2 n.
To violate, *violo, as, avi.* 1 act.
Violence, *Vis, vis.* 3 f.
Violently, *Ferociter.* adv.
Virgil, *Virgilius, ii,* 2 m.
A Virgin, *Virgo, inis,* 3 f.
A Viſion, *Viſum, i.* 2 n.
To viſit, *Viſo, is, ſi.* 3 act.
To viſit, *ſaluto, as, avi,* 1 act.
Vital, *Vitalis, e, lis,* adj. 3 art.
Unblameable, *Innocuus, a, um.* adj.
Uncapable, *Incapax, acis,* adj. 3 art.
Unkle, *Avunculus, i.* 2 m.
Unconſtancy, *Mobilitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Unconſtant, *Mobilis, e, lis,* adj. 3 art.
Under, *Sub,* præp. ac. or abl.
To undergo, *Subeo, is, ivi.* 4 neut.
To underſtand, *intelligo, is, xi.* 3 ac.
Underſtanding, *Scientia, æ.* 1 f.
The Underſtanding, *Intellectus, us.* 4 m.
To undertake, *Suſcipio, is, epi.* 3 act.
An Undertaking, *Cœptum, i.* 2 n.
Undutifulneſs, *Contumacia, æ. Inobedientia, æ,* 1 f.
Unfaithful, *Malefidus, a, um,* adj.
Unfeignedly, *Sincerè.* adv.
Unfit, *Ineptus, a, um.* adj.
Ungodly, *Impius, a, um.* adj.
Ungrateful, *Ingratus, a, um.* adj.
Unhandſome, *Indecorus, a, um.* adj.
An Univerſity, *Academia, æ.* 1 f.
Unjuſt, *Iniquus, a, um.* adj.
Unkindneſs, *Aſperitas, tatis,* 3 f.
Unknown, *Ignotus, a, um.* part.
Unleſs, *Niſi.* conj.
Unlike, *Diſſimilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Unmarried, *Innuptus, a, um.*
Unpaſſable, *Invius, a, um.* adj.
Unpleaſant, *Injucundus, a, um.* adj.
Unpleaſant, *Ingratus, a, um.* adj.
Unprofitable, *Inutilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 ar.
Unpuniſhed, *Impunis, e, nis.* adj. 3 ar.
Unquiet, *Inquietus, a, um.*
Unſatiable, *Inexplebilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.

Unſhaken, *Immotus, a, um.* part.
Unskilful, *Inexpertus, a, um.* part.
Unſpotted, *Immaculatus, a, um.* adj.
To unteach, *Dedoceo, es, ui.* 2 act.
Unteachable, *Indocilis, e, lis.* 3 art.
Until, *Uſque.* adv.
Untouched, *Intactus, a, um.* part.
Unweary, *Incautus, a, um.* adj
Unwearied, *Indefeſſus, a, um.* adj.
Unwelcome, *Ingratus, a, um.* adj.
Unwholſome, *Inſalubris, bre, bris.* adj. 3 art.
Unwilling, *Invitus, a, um* adj.
Unworthy, *Indignus, a, um.* adj.
A Voice, *Vox, cis.* 3 f.
Void, *Inanis, e, nis.* adj. 3 art.
A Voyage, *Iter, ineris.* 3 n.
To vomit, *Vomo, is, ui.* 3 act.
Votary, *Cultor, oris,* 3 m.
To upbraid, *Exprobro, as, avi.* 1 act.
Upright, *Erectus, a, um.* adj.
To urge, *Urgeo, es, ſi.* 2 a.
To uſe, *Utor, eris uſus.* 3 d.
To uſe, *Soleo, es, litus.* 2 n. paſſ.
To be uſed, *Adhibendus, a, um.* part.
Uſeful, *Utilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 n.
Uſually, *Ferè.* adv.
Utmoſt, *Extremus, a, um.* adj.

W.

A Walk, *Ambulacrum, i.* 2 n.
To walk, *Ambulo, as, avi.* 1 n.
A Wall, *Murus, i,* 2 m.
To wallow, *Voluto, as, avi.* 1 act.
The Walls, *Mœnia, orum.* 2 plu. n.
To wander, *Vagor, aris, gatus.* 1 dep.
To want, *Egeo, es, ui,* 2 n.
To be wanting, *Deſum, es, fui.* irr. comp.
Wanton, *Laſcivus, a, um.* adj.
War, *Bellum, i.* 2 n.
In War, *Belli.* alſo adv.
Wares, *Merces, um.* 3 plu. f.
Warily, *Cautè.* adv.
Warlike, *Bellicus, a, um.* adj.
To warn, *Moneo, es, ui,* 2 act.
To waſh, *Lavo, as, avi.* 1 act.
To waſte, *Conſumo, is, pſi.* 3 act.
To waſte a City, *Spolio, as, avi.* 1 act.
Waſted, *Conſumptus, a, um.* adj.
Water, *Aqua, æ.* 1 f.
A Wave, *Fluctus, us.* 4 m.
To wax pale, *Paleſco, is, ui.* 3 n.
A way, *Via, æ.* 1 f.

A way or manner, *Modus, i.* 2 n. incept.
Weak, *Debilis, e, lis.* adj. 3 art.
Weakneſs, *Debilitas, tatis.* 3 f.
Wealth, *Opes, um.* 3 plu. f.
Wealthy, *Opulentus, a, um.* adj.
To wear out, *Tero, is, trivi.* 3 act.
To wear Cloaths, *Induo, is, ui.* 3 a.
Weary, *Pertæſus, a, um.* adj.
To weary, *Fatigo, as, avi.* 1 a.
To be weary, *Tædet.* imp.
To be wearied, *Fatigor, aris, atus.* 1 p.
Wearineſs, *Tædium, ii.* 3 n.
Weariſome, *Moleſtus, a, um.* adj.
To weave, *Texo, is, ui.* 3 act.
A Weaver, *Textor, oris.* 3 m.
We, *Nos,* pron. from *Ego.*
A Weed, *Alga, æ.* 1 f.
A Week, *Septimana, æ.* 1 f.
To weep, *Fleo, es, evi.* 2 n.
A Weight, *Pondus, deris.* 3 n.
Weighty, *Gravis, e, vis.* adj.
Welfare, *Salus, utis.* 3 f.
Well, *Benè.* adv.
Well, *Sanus, a, um.* adj.
Well fed, *Satur, a, um.* adj.
A Whelp, *Catulus, i.* 2 m.
What, *Quis.* pron. ſub.
When, *Quando.* adv.
Where, *Ubi.* adv.
Whether, *Num.* adv.
Whether, *Uter, a, um.*
Which, *Qui.* pron. Relative.
Whilſt, *Dum.* adv.
A Whip, *Flagellum, i.* 2 n.
To whiſper, *Suſurro, as, avi.* 1 act.
White, *Candidus, a, um.*
Who, *Qui.* Rel.
Who, *Quis.* pron.
Whole, *Totus, a, um.*
Wholeſome, *Sabuler, bre, bris.* adj. 3 a.
Whoriſh, *Inceſtuoſus, a, um.*
Wholly, *Penitus.* adv.
Why, *Quarè.* adv.
Wicked, *Sceleſtus, a, um.* adj.
Wickedneſs, *Impietas, tatis.* 3 f.
A Wife, *Uxor, oris.* 3 f.
Wild, *Ferus, a, um.* adj.
A Wild beaſt, *Fera, æ.* 1 f.
Wilful, *Contumax, acis.* adj. 3 art.
Wilfully, *Libentèr.* adv.
Will, *Voluntas, tatis.* 3 f.
Willing, *Promptus, a, um.* adj.
Willingly, *Libentèr.* adv.
Willing, *Libens, tis.* adj. 3 art.
To win, *Concilio, as, avi.* 1 act.
Wind, *Ventus, i.* 2 m.
Wine, *Vinum, i.* 2 n.
Winged, *Alatus, a, um.* adj.
To wink, *Niveo, es, ivi.* 2 n.
The Winter, *Hyems, emis.* 3 f.
Wiſdom, *Sapientia, æ.* 1 f.
Wiſe, *Sapiens, tis.* part. 3 art.
A Wiſe man, *Sapiens, tis.* 3 m.
A Wiſh, *Votum, i.*

To wiſh for, *exopto, as, avi.*
Wit, *ingenium, ii.* 2 n.
To wit, *ſcilicet.* conj.
A Witch, *ſaga, æ.* 1 f.
With, *cum.* præp. abl.
To wither, *areſco, is, ui.*
With all the heart. *ex animo.*
To withhold, *detineo, es, ui.* 2 act.
Without, *Abſque.* præp. abl.
A Witneſs, *Teſtis, is.* 3 com. 2.
A Woer, *Procus, i.* 2 m.
A Wolf, *Lupus, i.* 2 m.
A Woman, *Mulier, eris.* 3 f.
Womaniſh, *Muliebris, e, bris.* adj. 3 art.
Wonderful, *Mirandus, a, um.*
Wondrous, *Mirus, a, um.*
To wonder, *Miror, aris, atus.*
To be wont, *Soleo, es, itus.* 2 n.
Wonted, *Solitus, a, um.* part.
A Word, *Verbum, i.* 2 n.
Work, *Opus, eris.* 3 n.
To work, *Operor, aris, atus.*
A Workman, *Opifex, icis.* 3 com. 2.
The world, *Mundus, i.* 2 m.
Worldly, *Mundanus, a, um.*
Worſe, *Pejor, jus, oris.* adj.
Worſhip, *Cultus, us.* 4 m.
A Worſhipper, *Cultor, oris.* 3 m.
Worſt, *Peſſimus, a, um.*
Worth, *Dignitas, tatis.* 3 f.
A Wound, *Vulnus, eris.* 3 n.
To wound, *Vulnero, as, avi.* 1 a.
A wrack, *Cruciatus, us.* 4 m.
To write, *Scribo, is, pſi.* 3 a.
Wretched, *Miſer, a, um.* adj.

Y.

A Yard, *Ulna, æ.* 1 f.
A Year, *Annus, i.* 2 m.
Ye, *Vos.* pron. plu. of *tu.*
To Yield, *Præbeo, es, ui.* 2.
To Yield to, *Cedo, is, ceſſi.* 3 a.
Yellow, *Flavus, a, um.* adj.
Yeſterday, *Heri.* adv.
Yet, *Tamen.* conj.
York, *Eboracum, i.* 2 f.
You, *Vos, Tu.* pron. ſubſt.
Young, } *Junior, ius, oris.*
Younger, } adj.
Your, *Veſter, a, um.* pron.
Youth, *Juventus, tutis.* 3 f.
A Youth, *Adoleſcens, tis.* 3 com. 2.

Z.

ZEal, *Zelotypia, æ.* 1 f.
Zoilus, i. 2 m.

A SUPPLEMENT; CONTAINING

A *Catalogue* of ſeveral Verbs, Adjectives, Impersonals and Participles, ſhewing what Caſes they will govern: With a hint of the Rules to which they belong.

THeſe Verbs will have a Nominative Caſe before them, and a Nominative after them.

Sum
Forem
Fio
Exiſto
D cor
Vocor
Salutor
Appellor
Habeor
Scribor
Exiſtimor
&c.

By *Sum*, *Forem*, *Fio*, *Exiſto*, &c.

Verba Subſtantiva Sum Forem, &c.

Alſo,

Incedo
Curro
Sedeo
Appareo
Bibo
Cubo
Studeo
Dormio
Somnio, &c.

By Verbs that betoken bodily moving, going, &c.

Item Verba geſtus, &c.

Theſe Verbs will have a Genetive Caſe.

Sum. By this Verb *Sum*, when it, &c.

Sum Genitivum poſtulat, &c.

Satago
Miſerior
Miſereſco
} By *Satago*, *Miſereor*, &c.

Theſe a Genitive, and Accuſative.

Reminiſcor
Recordor
Obliviſcor
} By *Reminiſcor*, *Obliviſcor*, &c.

Moneo
Accuſo
Arguo
} *Reum Criminis.*

Convinco
Damno
Abſolvo
} By Verbs of accuſing, condemning, &c.

Verba Accuſandi, &c.

Æſtimo
Potior
} A Genitive, or Ablative.

Potior aut Gen. aut Ablat. &c.

Æſtimo vel Gen. vel Ablat. &c.

Sum

Sum will have a double Dative Caſe.

Alſo *Sum* with his Compounds, *&c.*

By *Sum cum multis*, &c.

Theſe Verbs will have a Dative Caſe.

Impero
Servio
Dominor
Promitto
Credo
Confido
Polliceor
Medeor
Reddo
Fido
Solvo
Nubo, &c.

By all manner of Verbs, *&c.*

Omnia Verba Acquiſitive, &c.

Adulor
Blandior
Cedo
Do
Edico
Faveo
Gratulor
Hæreo
Indulgeo
Lenocinor
Moderor
Opitulor
Malo
Parco
Queror
Reſpondeo
Suadeo
Tempero
Valedico
Commodo
Incommodo
Noceo
Obſum
Proſum
Placeo
Iraſcor
Minor
Indignor
Pareo

By all manner of Verbs, *&c.*

Omnia Verba Acquiſitive, &c.

Alſo theſe Verbs will have a Dative Caſe.

Satisfacio
Benefacio
Malefacio

Alſo Verbs compounded with *Satis*, *Bene*, *Male*, &c.

Theſe Verbs will have two Accuſatives after them.

Docco
Rogo
Poſco
Celo
Exuo

By Verbs of asking, teaching, and arraying, *&c.*

Verba rogandi, docendi, &c.

Induor
Moneor
Doceor
Rogor
Poſcor
Hortor

Paſſives with an Accuſative.

Theſe

These Verbs will have an Ablative Case after them.

Careo
Egeo
Indigeo
Opus est
Vinco
Abundo
Affluo
Impleo
Onero
Levo
Emo
Licitor
Vendo
Vescor
Vivo
Reor
Nascor
Victito
Sto
Consto
Nitor
Utor
Fungor
Fruor
Lætor
Glorior
Gaudeo

By Verbs of Plenty, *&c.*

By *Verba abundandi*, &c.

See the Rules for these at, and after all Verbs, require an Ablative Case, *&c.*

By *Quodvis Verbum admittit Ablativum*, &c.

By *Utor*, *Fungor*, *Fruor*, &c.

These Adjectives will have a Genitive Case, *of* following them.

Memor
Immemor
Reus
Insons
Peritus
Rudis
Cupidus
Timidus
Similis
Dissimilis
Par
Impar

By Adjectives that signify desire, knowledge, *&c.*

Adjectiva quæ desiderium, notitiam, &c.

Also,

Aliquis
Uter
Neuter
Nemo
Nullus
Solus
Unus
Medius
Quisque, &c.

By Nouns Partitives, and certain Interrogatives, *&c.*

Nomina Partitiva aut Partitive, &c.

These

These Adjectives will have a Dative Case, *to* following them.

Utilis, *Inutilis*, *Noxius*, *Charus*, *Fidelis*, *Infidelis*, *Supplex*, *Adversarius*, &c. — By Adjectives that betoken profit or disprofit, likeness, *&c.* *Adjectiva quibus commodum*, &c.

Also Adjectives, *in bilis.*

Similis, *Dissimilis*, *Par*, *Impar* — A Genitive or Dative Case, *ib. Quædam ex his* &c.

These Adjectives will have an Accusative Case with a Prepositon.

Natus, *Commodus*, *Incommodus*, *Utilis*, *Inutilis* — By *Natus*, *Commodus*, *Incommodus*, &c.

These Adjectives will have an Accusative, the measure of quantity in *English* set first, and sometimes an Ablative and Genitive Case.

Longus, *Latus*, *Crassus*, *Altus*, *Profundus* — By the measure of length, breadth, thickness, *&c.* *Magnitudinis mensura*, &c.

These Adjectives will have an Ablative and a Genitive, *of* following them.

Plenus, *Vacuus*, *Dignus*, *Indignus* — By Adjectives signifying fulness, emptiness, *&c.*

Fretus, *Contentus*, *Præditus*, *Captus*, *Exortis* — *Adjectiva quæ ad copiam egestatemve*, &c. *Dignus*, *Indignus*, &c.

Opus, *Usus* — An Ablative by *Opus & Usus*, when they be *Latin*, &c. *Opus & Usus*, &c.

These Impersonals will have a Genitive Case.

Interest, *refert & est*, for *Interest* — By *Interest*, *refert & est*, for *Interest.*

These

These Impersonals will have a Dative.

Accidit
Certum est
Contingit
Constat
Confert
Competit
Conducit
Convenit
Placet
Displicet
Dolet
Expedit
Evenit
Liquet
Libet
Licet
Nocet
Prodest
Præstat
Patet
Stat
Restat
Benefit
Malefit
Satisfit
Supersedit
Suffecit
Vacat, &c

By certain Impersonals require a Dative, *&c.*

By *In Dativum feruntur hæc Impersonalia*; &c.

These will have an Accusative only.

Delectat
Decet
Juvat
Oportet

By some will have an Accusative only.

Per hæc Impersonalia accusandi.

These Impersonals will have an Accusative with a Genitive.

Pœnitet
Tædet
Miseret
Misereſcit
Pudet
Pigit

By some besides an Accusative, will have a Genitive, *&c.* *His Impersonalibus subjicitur Accusativus, cum Genitivo*, &c.

These Participles will have an Accusative Case, when they signify actively.

Exosus
Perosus
Pertæsus

By these Participial Voices, *&c.*

But
Exosus
Perosus

Exosus, *Perosus* &c. Dat. when they signify passively, *Exosus & Perosus etiam cum*, &c.

These Participles will have an Ablative Case.

Natus
Prognatus
Satus
Ortus
Cretus
Creatus
Editus

By *Natus*, *Prognatus*, &c.

These

Theſe Words (if the late learned Mr. *Waſe*, ſomerly Maſter of the Freeſchool at *Tunbridge*, may be credited, as who will queſtion it?) being got perfectly without Book, will much advantage Boys in putting Words in the true Caſe, and revive the Rules they have learned: Neither will it be loſt Labour (as I ſuppoſe) if once or twice in a month they read them over, to fix them in their memory.

Books

Books Printed for, and Sold by Thomas Cockerill *at the Corner of* Warwick-Lane, *near* Pater-Noſter-Row.

THE Practical Grammar: Or, the eaſieſt and ſhorteſt way to initiate young Children into the *Latin* Tongue; by the help whereof, a Child of Seven years old may learn more of the Grounds of that Language in three Months, than is ordinarily learn'd in a Years ſpace by thoſe of greater Age in Common Grammar Schools. Publiſh'd for the Uſe of ſuch as love not to be tedious. To which are added Tables of Mr *Walker*'s Particles, by the aſſiſtance whereof young Scholars may be the better enabled to peruſe that excellent and moſt uſeful Treatiſe. By *J. Philomath*, Maſter of a Free-School.

Phedri Auguſti Cæſaris liberti fabularum Æſopiarum libri quinque, Interpretatione & Notis illuſtravit Petrus Danet Academicus, juſſu Chriſtianiſſmi Regis, in uſum Sereniſſimi Delphini.

Gradus ad Parnaſſum ſive Novus Synonimorum, Epitheterum, Phraſium Poeticarum, ac Verſuum Theſaurus, ab uno è Societate Jeſu, &c.

Familiaria Colloquia, Opera Chriſtopheri Helvici *d' &c. Profeſſoris Gueſſenſis, olim ex Eraſmo Roterdamo, Ludovico Vive & Schottenio Haſſo ſelecta.*

Eutropii Hiſtoriæ Romanæ breviarium ab urbe condita uſque ad Valentinianum & Valentem Auguſtos: Ex recenſione & cum Notis Tan. Fabri. ut & Sexti Aurelii victoris, de viris illuſtribus liber. In uſum Scholarum.

Hiſtorical Collections; the Third Part, in Two Volumes; Never before Printed, containing the Principal Matters which happened from the Meeting of the Parliament, *November* the 3d. 1640. to the end of the Year 1644.

1644. wherein is a particular Account of the Riſe and Progreſs of the Civil War to that Period: Impartially related. Setting forth only matter of Fact in Order of Time, without Obſervation or Reflection. By *John Ruſhworth.* Folio.

Geography Rectified: Or, a Deſcription of the World in all its Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Iſlands, Cities, Towns, Seas, Rivers, Bays, Capes, Names, Inhabitants, Situations, Hiſtories, Cuſtoms, Commodities, Governments. Illuſtrated with about 80 Maps. Third Edition. By *Robert Morden.* Quarto.

Geography Anatomized: Or, a Complete Geographical Grammar, being a ſhort and exact Analyſis of the whole Body of Modern Geography; after a new, plain, and eaſy Method, whereby any Perſon may in a ſhort time attain to the knowledge of that moſt noble and uſeful Science, *&c.* To which is ſubjoined the preſent State of the *European* Plantations in the *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Indies*; with a reaſonable Propoſal for the Propagation of the Bleſſed Goſpel in all *Pagan* Countries. Illuſtrated with divers Maps. By *Patrick Gordon*, M. A. *Octavo.*

Love to Chriſt, neceſſary for all to eſcape the Curſe at his coming. By *Tho. Doolittle*, M. A.

An Expoſition of the Aſſemblies Shorter Catechiſm, with Practical Inferences from each Queſtion. By *John Flavell*, late Miniſter of the Goſpel at *Dartmouth* in *Devon.*

Engliſh Exerciſes for School Boys, to Tranſlate into *Latin*, comprizing all the Rules of Grammar, and other neceſſary Obſervations, aſcending gradually from the meaneſt to the higheſt Capacities. By *John Garretſon*, Schoolmaſter. Fifth Edition. *Twelves.*

A ſhort Introduction into Orthography, or the Method of true Spelling, publiſhed for the Common Good, but eſpecially for the uſe of a Private Grammar and Writing-School in *Whitecroſs ſtreet.* By *Richard Mather*, Schoolmaſter.

An Eſſay on Projects. By a good Hand.

The

The Morning Exercise at *Cripplegate*: Or several Cases of Conscience practically Resolved by sundry Ministers. *Quarto.*

A Supplement to the Morning Exercise; or several more Cases of Conscience practically Resolved by sundry Ministers.

A seasonable Discourse, wherein is examined what is lawful, during the Confusions and Revolutions of Government. Stiched.

Instructions about Heart-Work, what is to be done on God's part and ours, for the cure and keeping of the Heart, *&c.* By that Eminent Gospel-Minister, Mr. *Richard Alleyn.* With a Preface by Dr. *Annesley.* The Second Edition. *Octavo.*

The Evidence of Things not seen: Or divers Spiritual and Philosophical Discourses, concerning the State of Holy Men after Death: By that eminently Learned Divine, *Moses Amyraldus.* Translated out of the *French* Tongue by a Minister of the Church of *England.*

Poems on several Occasions, with a Pastoral; to which is added a Discourse of Life. By *John Tutchin.*

A Succinct and Seasonable Discourse of the Occasions, Causes, Natures, Rise, Growth, and Remedies of *Mental Errors.* To which is added, (1.) An Answer to Mr. *Cary* against Infant-Baptism. (2.) An Answer to some *Arminian* Errors. (3.) A Sermon about Union. By *John Flavel.*

Mr. *John Flavel*'s Remains; being two Sermons: The one preached at *Dartmouth* in *Devon* on the Day of the Coronation of Their Majesties. The latter intended to be preached at a Meeting of the United Ministers of several Counties. With some Account of his Life.

A Discourse of Regeneration, Faith, and Repentance: Preach'd at the Merchants Lecture in *Broadstreet.* By *Tho. Cole,* Minister of the Gospel.

A Discourse of Christian Religion in sundry Points; Preach'd at the Merchants Lecture. By *Thos. Cole.*